UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

Robustness of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 encapsulated in lyophilized Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid based synbiotic microparticles

BY

Amakiri Andreal Chioma

Submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the degree

Magister Scientiae

In the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences, Department of Microbiology and Plant Pathology, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, South Africa

May 2015

Supervisor: Dr M.S. Thantsha

Co-supervisor: Mr Lonji Kalombo

© University of Pretoria

DECLARATION

I declare that the dissertation " Robustness of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 encapsulated in lyophilized Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid based synbiotic microparticles" which I hereby submit for the degree of Magister Scientiae at the University of Pretoria is my own work and has not previously been submitted by me for a degree at this or any other tertiary institution.

....

© University of Pretoria

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEGDEMENTS **9**

PUBLICATIONS AND CONFERENCE CONTRIBUTIONS **10**

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS **11**

LIST OF TABLES **13**

LIST OF FIGURES **14**

SUMMARY **16**

INTRODUCTION **19**

REFERENCES **22**

CHAPTER 1 .... **27**

Literature Review **27**

1.1 Overview 28

1.2 Probiotics 28

1.2.1 Definitions and characteristics 28

1.2.2 Lactobacilli 29

1.2.3 Bifidobacteria 30

1.2.4 Health benefits of probiotics 31

1.2.5 Mechanism of action of probiotics 32

1.2.6 Steps taken to improve probiotic viability 34

1.3 Prebiotics 36

1.3.1 Synbiotics 39

1.4 Microencapsulation 40

1.4.1 Overview 40

1.4.2 Methods of microencapsulation 41

1.4.2.1 Extrusion 41

1.4.2.2 Emulsion 41

© University of Pretoria

1.4.2.3 Spray drying 42
1.4.2.4 Freeze drying 43
1.4.2.5 Spray coating 44
1.4.2.6 Spray chilling 45
1.4.2.7 Encapsulation under supercritical carbondioxide 45
1.4.3 Materials used for probiotic encapsulation 46
1.4.3.1 Alginate 46
1.4.3.2 K- carrageenan 47
1.4.3.3 Starch 47
1.4.3.4 Cellulose acetate phthalate 48
1.4.3.5 Gellan gum and Xanthan gum 48
1.4.3.5 Chitosan 48
1.4.3.6 Gelatin and Milk proteins 49
1.4.3.7 Lipid based coating materials 49
1.4.3.7.1 Compritol 50
1.4.3.7.2 Carnauba wax 50
1.4.3.7.3 Gelucire and Vegetal 50
1.5 Food products containing encapsulated probiotics 51
1.5.1 Frozen ice cream 51
1.5.2 Cheese 52
1.5.3 Yoghurt 52
1.6 Methods for quantification of probiotics in foods 54
1.6.1 Conventional method 55
1.6.2 Biochemical methods 55
1.6.2.1 Fluorescent microscopy 55
1.6.2.2 Flow cytometry and microplate fluorochrome assay 56
1.7 Sensorial and physico-chemical evaluation of probiotic foods 57
1.7.1 Chemical Analysis 58
1.7.2 Structural Analysis 59
1.8 Conclusion 60
1.9 References 61

© University of Pretoria

CHAPTER 2 90

Production and characterization of freeze dried Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid-based synbiotic microparticles containing *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 90

2.1 Abstract 91

2.2 Introduction 92

2.3 Materials and Methods 93

2.3.1 Reagents and bacterial cultures 93

2.3.2 Bacterial culturing and enumeration 94

2.3.3 Bacteria encapsulation 94

2.3.4 Encapsulation efficiency 95

2.3.5 Particle size analysis 96

2.3.6 Microscopy 96

2.3.6.1 Scanning electron microscopy 96

2.3.6.2 Confocal laser scanning microscopy 96

2.3.7 Statistical analysis 97

2.4 Results and Discussion 97

2.4.1 Comparison of formulations 97

2.4.2 Particle size distribution and encapsulation efficiency 100

2.4.3 Morphological characterization and bacterial loading within microparticles .. 103

2.5 Conclusion 107

2.6 References 108

CHAPTER 3 115

Survival of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 during storage and simulated gastrointestinal fluids transit 115

3.1 Abstract 116

3.2 Introduction 117

3.3 Materials and Methods 118

3.3.1 Reagents and bacterial cultures 118

© University of Pretoria

3.3.2 Bacterial culturing and enumeration 118
3.3.3 Bacteria encapsulation 119
3.3.4 Determination of total bacteria encapsulated 120
3.3.5 Preparation of simulated gastrointestinal fluids 120
3.3.5.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in simulated gastric fluid (SGF) 120
3.3.5.2 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in simulated intestinal fluid (SIF) 121
3.3.5.3 Survival of encapsulated B. *longum* during storage 121
3.3.6 Enumeration of cells 121
3.3.6.1 After exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids 121
3.3.6.2 After storage 122
3.3.7 Fluorochrome microplate assay 122
3.3.7.1 Preparation of standard curve 122
3.3.7.2 Staining of bacterial suspensions and fluorochrome microplate assay 123
3.3.7.3 Fluorochrome microplate assay of B. *longum* LMG 13197 cells after exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids and storage 124
3.3.8 Flow cytometry assay 125
3.3.8.1 Preparation of standard curve 125
3.3.8.2 Staining of bacterial suspensions and flow cytometry assay 126
3.3.8.3 Preparation of control samples 127
3.3.8.4 Flow cytometry assay of cells after storage 127
3.3.9 Statistical analysis 128
3.4 Results and Discussions 128
3.4.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in simulated gastrointestinal fluids 128
3.4.2 Survival of encapsulated bacteria during storage 131
3.4.2.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria during storage (flow cytometry) 134
3.5 Conclusion 139
3.6 References 139
CHAPTER 4 147
Survival of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt and its influence on the physico-chemical attributes of yoghurt 147

© University of Pretoria

4.1 Abstract 148

4.2 Introduction 149

4.3 Materials and Methods 150

4.3.1 Reagents and bacterial cultures 150

4.3.2 Bacterial culturing and enumeration 150

4.3.3 Bacteria encapsulation 151

4.3.4 Determination of total bacteria encapsulated 152

4.3.5 Survival of encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt 152

4.3.5.1 Preparation of yoghurt 152

4.3.5.2 Enumeration of *B. longum* cells after storage in yoghurt 153

4.3.6 Fluorochrome microplate assay 154

4.3.6.1 Preparation of standard curve 154

4.3.6.2 Staining of bacteria suspensions and fluorochrome microplate assay 155

4.3.6.3 Fluorochrome microplate assay of *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells after storage in yoghurt 156

4.3.7 Flow cytometry assay 156

4.3.7.1 Preparation of standard curve 156

4.3.7.2 Staining of bacteria suspensions and flow cytometry assay 157

4.3.7.3 Preparation of control samples 158

4.3.7.4 Flow cytometry assay of cells after storage in yoghurt 158

4.3.8 Physico-chemical analysis of yoghurt 159

4.3.8.1 pH analysis 159

4.3.8.2 Colour analysis 159

4.3.9 Statistical analysis 160

4.4 Results and Discussions 160

4.4.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in yoghurt as determined by PCA and FMA 160

4.4.2 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in yoghurt as determined by flow cytometry 162

4.4.3 Physico-chemical analysis 166

© University of Pretoria

4.4.3.1 Change in pH of yoghurts containing *B. longum* during storage............... 166
4.4.3.2 Change in colour of yoghurts containing *B. longum* during storage.......... 170
4.5 Conclusion 173
4.6 References 173
CHAPTER 5 182
Conclusions and Recommendations 182
5.1 Conclusions 183
5.2 Recommendations for Future work 185

© University of Pretoria

ACKNOWLEGDEMENTS

My greatest thanks is to God my father and master of the universe. With him by my side, I was fed spiritually, physically, academically and emotionally. This gave me all the strength and courage I needed to face the task ahead of me. He is the author and finisher of my faith.

To my awesome supervisor Dr. M.S. Thantsha, who showed me love, warmth, care, patience and gave me a home away from home. She taught me to always be better than what I was yesterday. Her level of integrity, knowledge and wisdom will always push me to greater heights.

To my Co-supervisor Lonji Kalombo at the Polymers and Composites group of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) for his advice and encouragement during my research processes. To Vincent Khumalo and Aisha Jaokeet at CSIR who were always willing to help me no matter the time or day.

I am grateful to Allan Hall and Antoinette Buys from the Laboratory for Microscopy and Microanalysis for their support, patience, kindness and professional expertise. To Annel Smith from Bioinformatics and Sequencing building for her guidance, encouragement, advice and expertise during the flow cytometry phase of my research.

To Markus Labuschagne for his friendliness, kindness, encouragement and his willingness to help and push me forward. To Moloko Mathipa and Divine Shyntum for their friendliness, professional and moral support. To Rasheed Adeleke for always checking up on me. To my friends Udal, Nelly, Joel, Charles, Khumbuzile and Karabo for always being there for me and putting smiles on my face.

To Eldon Hamilton for his immeasurable love, care, advice and financial support. His utmost faith in me has kept me going and as a result I have never felt alone or unable to achieve anything. The unconditional love from my parents and my brother will always be remembered and appreciated. The tough times would have been unbearable without their prayers, love and support. I am eternally grateful to God for what he has given me through them.

© University of Pretoria

PUBLICATIONS AND CONFERENCE CONTRIBUTIONS

Research articles

Amakiri A. C., Kalombo. L and Thantsha M. S. (2015). Production and characterization of freeze dried Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid-based synbiotic microparticles containing *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197. Journal of Food and Bioproducts Processing (Submitted).

Amakiri A. C., Kalombo. L and Thantsha M. S. (2015). *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 encapsulated in Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin microparticles endures ambient temperature, simulated gastrointestinal fluids and in yoghurt without adverse effects on its physico-chemical properties. Beneficial Microbes (Submitted).

Conference Proceedings

Amakiri A. C., Kalombo. L and Thantsha M. S. (2014). Characterization of Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid-based synbiotic microparticles containing *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197. Proceedings of Microscopy Society of Southern Africa, vol. 44, pp. 28. ISSN: 0250-0418: ISBN: 0-620-35056-3.

Conference papers

Amakiri A. C., Kalombo. L and Thantsha M. S. Production and characterization of freeze dried Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid-based synbiotic microparticles containing *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197. Microscopy Society of Southern Africa (MSSA) Conference. Protea Hotel, Stellenbosch, 1st -5th December 2014 (Oral presentation).

© University of Pretoria

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

AMC: Arroyo, Martin and Cotton

ATR: Acid Tolerance Response

CFDA: Carboxyfluorescein diacetate

CIE: Commission Internationale de I' Eclairage

CLSM: Confocal Laser Scanning Microscopy

DCM: Dichloromethane

DNA: Deoxyribonucleic acid

DP: Degree of Polymerization

EE: Encapsulation Efficiency

EFSA: European Food Safety Authority

ENM: Electronic Nose Methodology

FAO: Food and Agricultural Organisation

FCA: Flow Cytometry Assay

FDA: Food and Drug Administration

FISH: Fluorescent In-Situ Hybridization

FMA: Fluorochrome Microplate Assay

FOS: Fructooligosaccharides

FSC: Forward Angle Light Scatter

GBH: Glyceryl Behenate

GC: Guanine and Cytosine

GIT: Gastrointestinal Tract

GMP: Genetically Modified Probiotics

GMS: Glyceryl Mono-Stearate

GOS: Galactooligosaccharides

GRAS: Generally Regarded as Safe

HLB: Hydrophillic-Lipophillic Balance

HPLC: High Performance Liquid Chromatography

ICH: International Conference on Harmonization

LAB: Lactic Acid Bacteria

LDL: Low-Density Lipoprotein

LSD: Least Significant Difference

© University of Pretoria

MRS: De Man, Rogosa and Sharpe Agar

NADH: Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide

NDO: Non Digestible Oligosaccharide

PBS: Phosphate Buffered Saline

PCR: Polymerase Chain Reaction

PI: Propidium Iodide

PVA: Polyvinyl Alcohol

PVAc-CA: Poly- (vinyl acetate co-crotonic acid)

PVP: Poly (vinyl pyrrolidone)

ScCO_2: Supercritical Carbon dioxide

SEM: Scanning Electron Microscopy

SGF: Simulated Gastric Fluid

SIF: Simulated Intestinal Fluid

SSC: Side Angle Light Scatter

USDA: United States Department of Agriculture

VPC: Viable Plate Count

WHO: World Health Organization

© University of Pretoria

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1 Mean particles size and encapsulation efficiency of non-centrifuged Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin microparticles..103

Table 3.1 Proportions of live: dead cells used to calculate standard curve...........................123

Table 4.1 Proportions of live: dead cells used to calculate standard curve...........................154

Table 4.2 Live counts of unencapsulated and Vegetal encapsulated *B. longum* cells (with and without inulin) obtained by flow cytometry and viable plate count at zero and sixth week of storage in yoghurt at 4°C..166

Table 4.3 pH changes in yoghurt samples containing unencapsulated and Vegetal encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 (with and without inulin) stored at 4°C for 6 weeks...169

Table 4.4 Changes in colour of yoghurt samples containing *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells during storage at 4°C for 6 weeks..172

© University of Pretoria

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1 Main molecular mechanisms involved in the response of bifidobacteria to bile, heat and acid stress conditions.....36

Figure1.2 Processing steps for the production of set and style yoghurts.....53

Figure 2.1 Viable numbers of bacteria released from the different microparticles before and after freeze drying in different formulations.....98

Figure 2.2 Encapsulation efficiencies of microparticles produced with formulations containing different inulin concentrations.....99

Figure 2.3 Average particle size distributions of Vegetal microparticles.....102

Figure 2.4 SEM images showing Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles with and without inulin.....105

Figure 2.5 CLSM images of stained *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells within Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles.....107

Figure 3.1 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and green/red fluorescence ratio (Ratio G/R).....124

Figure 3.2 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and measured FCM live cells.....126

Figure 3.3 Survival of Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin encapsulated and unencapsulated *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 after exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids over 8 h.....129

© University of Pretoria

Figure 3.4 Survival of unencapsulated and encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 during storage at 4°C and 25°C for 6 weeks..132

Figure 3.5 Dot plots showing setting of quadrants using *B.longum* LMG 13197 controls...135

Figure 3.6 Dot plots showing the survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during storage at 4°C...137

Figure 3.7 Dot plots showing the survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during storage at 25°C...138

Figure 4.1 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and green/red fluorescence ratio (Ratio G/R)...155

Figure 4.2 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and measured FCM live cells.................................157

Figure 4.3 Survival of unencapsulated and encapsulated *B longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt at 4°C for 6 weeks..162

Figure 4.4 Dot plots showing setting of quadrants using *B. longum* LMG 13197 controls...163

Figure 4.5 Dot plots for *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 stored in yogurt at 4 for 6 weeks..165

© University of Pretoria

SUMMARY

Robustness of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 encapsulated in lyophilized Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid based synbiotic microparticles

Student **: Amakiri Andreal Chioma**

Supervisor **: Dr. M. S. Thantsha**

Co-supervisor **: Mr L. Kalombo**

Department **: Microbiology and Plant Pathology**

Degree **: MSc (Microbiology)**

Consumers are currently concerned about improving their health, and therefore demand foods that are beneficial to overall health. This has caused the rising interest in probiotics, which are live microorganisms which when ingested in sufficient amounts, restore balance in the gastrointestinal tract and consequently improve health. Probiotic bacteria have been incorporated into various food products which are now referred to as functional foods, and represent about 65% of the world's food market. Probiotics are sensitive to various environmental factors such as oxygen, moisture, pH and temperature. It is of great importance that probiotics remain viable and alive throughout the stages of processing, storage in food products and during gastrointestinal transit in order for them to confer health benefits. The use of prebiotics and microencapsulation to protect and ensure viability of probiotics has been used in food industries. Challenges faced when using most microencapsulation techniques include the need for a food grade encapsulating material, stability of the probiotic cells during encapsulation processes and storage, the need to minimize negative effects they might have on the organoleptic properties of foods into which they are incorporated. The freeze drying technique, which is known to be suitable for the preservation of probiotic cells, avoids heat induced injuries to cells and also slows down detrimental chemical reactions, was used in the current study to prepare microparticles encapsulating probiotic bifidobacteria. Due to limited reports on the use of lipid based food

© University of Pretoria

grade encapsulating materials for the microencapsulation of probiotics, this study explored the use of such materials and developed a lipid based synbiotic material which is expected to protect and improve probiotic viability.

A lipid based excipient Vegetal BM 297 ATO and various concentrations of the prebiotic inulin were used to prepare different formulations, followed by an investigation to determine which concentration of inulin resulted in better protection and survival of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 during the freeze drying process. *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 was successfully encapsulated in Vegetal using freeze drying method. It was observed that the formulation prepared with 2% (w/v) inulin resulted in better protection of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during the encapsulation process. Characterization of the microparticles revealed that they contained high numbers of bacterial cells resulting from relatively high encapsulation efficiency. The presence of inulin resulted in microparticles with an acceptable size which is desirable for food applications. These results led to further investigation of the potential of Vegetal-inulin matrix to protect bifidobacteria in simulated gastrointestinal fluids and improve shelf life under different storage conditions.

This study demonstrates that the Vegetal-inulin matrix protected *B. longum* LMG 13197 during transit in the simulated gastric fluid (SGF) and subsequently released the cells in the simulated intestinal fluid (SIF). In comparison with the unencapsulated cells, the number of cells released in SIF was higher, which suggests that the Vegetal-inulin matrix has the potential to release probiotics in the colon for health benefits to be exerted. The shelf life of encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 powders stored in glass bottles was investigated under two different storage temperatures for 6 weeks. The study demonstrates that although there was a high loss of viable probiotic cells during storage at 25°C, Vegetal-inulin matrix improved survival of probiotics for 3 weeks as opposed to the unencapsulated cells. On the other hand, encapsulation with Vegetal did not offer improved survival of bacteria when compared to the unencapsulated cells at 4°C, but the addition of inulin offered better protection for up to 5 weeks. Therefore, better shelf life of Vegetal-inulin microparticles containing *B. longum* LMG 13197 can be achieved at 4°C than at 25°C.

The food industry experience challenges in maintaining probiotic viability in dairy products due to post acidification processes occurring at refrigeration temperatures. The potential of Vegetal-inulin matrix to protect bifidobacteria in yoghurt during storage was investigated. It

© University of Pretoria

is also important that the microparticles containing probiotics do not negatively affect the organoleptic properties of the food product into which they are incorporated. In light of this, this study also investigated how the incorporation of Vegetal-inulin microparticles containing bifidobacteria affects the organoleptic properties of yoghurt. The amount of viable bacterial cells obtained at the end of storage period was high for Vegetal-inulin encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197, as opposed to the unencapsulated cells. At the end of storage period, a significant decrease in pH was observed in yoghurt containing unencapsulated bacteria than those containing encapsulated bacteria. This suggested that encapsulation prevented the release of metabolites produced by probiotics from negatively affecting the properties of yoghurt during storage. After investigating the effects of incorporated microparticles on the colour of yoghurt, a yellowish-white colour was observed for all the yoghurt samples, regardless of the significant differences observed for the colour attributes between all yoghurt samples during storage.

© University of Pretoria

INTRODUCTION

In the early 20th century, the Russian biologist Eli Metchnikoff mentioned that maintenance of the human gastrointestinal tract (GIT) requires constant ingestion of fermented food products, which contain commensal microorganisms (Holzapfel et al., 1998; Jankovic et al., 2010). The increasing need for foods that are able to contribute to better health by consumers has led to continuous research which focuses on improving the gastrointestinal balance by using live microbes, which are termed probiotics. Probiotics are defined as "live microorganisms which when administered in adequate amounts confer a health benefit on the host" (FAO/WHO, 2002). The ingestion of probiotics is associated with health benefits such as immune modulation, alleviation of lactose intolerance, acute gastroenteritis and rotavirus diarrhoea, inflammatory diseases such as Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis, hypercholesterolemia, antibiotic-associated diarrhoea and atopic disorders (dermatitis and allergies) (Mack et al., 1999; Vesa et al., 2000; Fooks and Gibson, 2002; Furrie et al., 2005; Shah, 2007; Henker et al., 2008; Burgain et al., 2011). Factors such as stress, antibiotics and surgery can cause an imbalance in the gut system, as they tend to increase the concentration of harmful microbes while decreasing the commensals (Cummings and Macfarlane, 1997). Therefore, in order to restore balance in the gut, probiotics have to be introduced as dietary supplements or as functional foods (foods which contain live microorganisms) such as yoghurt, cheese, ice cream, chocolate and cereals (Levy, 2000; Anal and Singh, 2007). For them to promote health benefits in individuals, probiotics must be viable and able to reproduce in the human GIT, must not be toxic, must compete and exert an antagonistic effect on pathogens and must be genetically stable (Huis in't Veld et al., 1994; Lee and Salminen, 1995). The most commonly used probiotic bacteria belong to the genera *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* (Tannock, 2001). These bacteria are preferred because they are of human origin, thus they are the only strains that can colonize and adhere to the GIT for an extended period of time (Bielecka et al., 2002).

Studies have shown that probiotics can exert health benefits if they survive the adverse conditions witnessed during manufacturing processes, storage temperatures and transit through the GIT (Brinques et al., 2011). In essence, probiotic foods should contain an adequate number of viable cells at the time of consumption, with a minimum of 10^6 – 10^7 viable cells per gram or millilitre (Ishibashi and Shimamura, 1993; Krasaekoopt et al., 2003).

© University of Pretoria

Global regulatory requirements for probiotic have become stricter over the years; as most probiotic products do not meet the standard required for beneficial purposes, due to poor survival of probiotics in food products (Doleyres and Lacroix, 2005; De Vos et al., 2010). The European Food Safety Authority (EFSA) has also stated the possibility of improper referencing and characterisation of strain for which the claims are made. Therefore, in order for manufacturers to state health claim for their probiotic products, they must have scientific proof and take into account the function and viability of the probiotic as a food additive (Jankovic et al., 2010; Burgain et al., 2011).

Among various methods applied to improve growth and survival of probiotics, the use of prebiotics has been explored and results have demonstrated improved probiotic viability in food products as well as during gastrointestinal transit (Fooks and Gibson, 2002). Prebiotics are non-digestible foods which positively affects the host by specifically stimulating the growth and activity of beneficial bacteria in the colon while restricting the harmful ones (Sekhon and Jairath, 2010). Studies have shown that inulin type prebiotics (e.g. fructooligosaccharides and inulin) have been well explored because of their ability to resist hydrolysis by gastric and pancreatic enzymes (Ramchandran and Shah, 2010). It has also been reported that addition of prebiotics improved viability of probiotic cells without affecting the sensorial properties of food (Hansen et al., 2002; Dianawati et al., 2013; Shamekhi et al., 2013).

In addition to the use of prebiotics, an approach geared towards providing a physical barrier to shield the cells from adverse environmental conditions such as light, oxygen and moisture is of considerable interest (Burgain et al., 2011). Microencapsulation is such an approach currently used in food and pharmaceutical industries to protect probiotics (Adhikari, 2000; Picot and Lacroix, 2004; Thantsha et al., 2009). It is a mechanical process which involves packaging solid, liquid and gaseous substances into small capsules (Champagne and Fustier, 2007). Therefore, microencapsulation ensures stabilization of the core material, controls oxidative reactions, masks flavours, colours or odours and extends shelf life of the active compounds (Anal and Singh, 2007). The microencapsulation techniques used include among others, extrusion and emulsion, spray dying, freeze drying and preparation of microparticles under supercritical carbon dioxide conditions (Champagne and Fustier, 2007; Thantsha et al., 2009; Burgain et al., 2011). However, the use of microencapsulation poses a lot of difficulties, as some of the techniques require the use of water, toxic organic solvents and

© University of Pretoria

high temperatures, which are all detrimental to the probiotic cells, and thus complicates food production (Champagne and Fustier, 2007; Burgain et al., 2011). Furthermore, microencapsulation requires use of food grade coating materials which are FDA (Food and Drug Administration) approved and are generally regarded as safe (GRAS) (Lian et al., 2003; Picot and Lacroix, 2004). Freeze drying has been utilized as a long term preservation technique for the encapsulation of probiotics (Petrovic et al., 2007). This method involves freezing of the culture and removal of water by sublimation under high vacuum (Carvalho et al., 2004). Freeze drying has been associated with the formation of ice crystals which cause damage to the cell structure as a result of changes in fatty acid and protein structure (Chen et al., 2006). Thus, cryoprotectants such as glucose, lactose, skim milk and fructose have been employed to prevent cell damage, thereby enhance viability of probiotics during various methods of encapsulation (Capela et al., 2006). Studies have shown that freeze drying reduces oxidative reactions, since it occurs in a vacuum (Carvalho et al., 2004). Thus, successful encapsulation of probiotics using various coating materials has been achieved using freeze drying (Capela et al., 2006; Heidebach et al., 2010; Pop et al., 2012; Chen et al., 2013). However, the use of lipid materials for the encapsulation of probiotics for food applications has not been much explored. In the current study, Vegetal BM 297 ATO will be used as a potential lipid material for the encapsulation of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197.

Following the successful encapsulation of *B. longum* LMG 13197 within Vegetal-inulin matrix by freeze drying, the specific aims of this study are to characterize the microparticles obtained after microencapsulation for their use in food industries, to assess the survival of bacteria within Vegetal-inulin microparticles when exposed to simulated gastrointestinal fluids, different storage temperatures, in yoghurt and the effects of microparticle incorporation on the physico-chemical properties of yoghurt. This study will expand the knowledge on the use of lipid matrices in food industries. It will furthermore create new ways of successfully storing probiotic supplements, should the probiotics show improved shelf life at non refrigeration temperatures. Following the survival of encapsulated probiotics and improved organoleptic quality in yoghurt, it is expected that this study will enhance the levels of live probiotic organisms in yoghurt, as well as increase the acceptability of yoghurt by consumers.

© University of Pretoria

REFERENCES

Adhikari, K., Mustapha, A., Grün, I.U., Fernando, L., 2000. Viability of Microencapsulated bifidobacteria in set yoghurt during refrigerated storage. Journal of Dairy Science 83 (9), 1946-1951.

Anal, A.K., Singh, H., 2007. Recent advances in microencapsulation of probiotics for industrial applications and targeted delivery. Trends in Food Science and Technology 18, 240-251.

Bielecka, M., Biedrzycka, E., Majkowska, A., 2002. Selection of probiotics and prebiotics for synbiotics and confirmation of their *in vivo* effectiveness. Food Research International 35, 125–131.

Brinques, G.B., Ayub, M.A.Z., 2011. Effects of microencapsulation on survival of *Lactobacillus plantarum* in simulated gastrointestinal conditions, refrigeration and yoghurt. Journal of Food Engineering 103, 123-128.

Burgain, J., Gaiani, C., Linder, M., Scher, J., 2011. Encapsulation of probiotic living cells: from the laboratory scale to industrial applications. Journal of Food Engineering 104, 467-483.

Capela, P., Hay, T.K.C., Shah, N.P., 2006. Effect of cryoprotectants, prebiotics and microencapsulation on the survival of probiotic organisms in yoghurt and freeze dried yoghurt. Food Research International 39, 203-211.

Carvalho, A.S., Silva, J., Ho, P., Teixeira, P., Malcata, X.F., Gibbs, P., 2004. Relevant factors for the preparation of freeze dried lactic acid bacteria. International Dairy Journal 14, 835-847.

Champagne, C.P., Fustier, P., 2007. Microencapsulation for the improved delivery of bioactive compounds into foods. Current Opinion in Biotechnology 18,184-190.

© University of Pretoria

Chen, H.C., Wen Lin, C., Chen, M.J., 2006. The effects of freeze drying and rehydration on survival of microorganisms in kefir. Asian-Australasian Journal of Animal Sciences 19 (1), 126-130.

Chen, Q., Zhong, F., Wen, J., McGillivray, D., Quek, S.Y., 2013. Properties and stability of spray dried and freeze dried microcapsules co-encapsulated with fish oil, phytosterol esters and limonene. Drying Technology 31, 707-716.

Cummings, J.H., Macfarlane, G.T., 1997. Role of intestinal bacteria in nutrient metabolism. Clinical Nutrition, Ed Blackwell, Oxford 16, 3-9.

De Vos, P., Faas, M. M., Spasojevic, M., Sikkema, J., 2010. Encapsulation for preservation of functionality and targeted delivery of bioactive food components. International Dairy Journal 20 (4), 292-302.

Dianawati, D., Mishra, V., Shah, N.P., 2013. Survival of *Bifidobacterium longum* 1941 microencapsulated with proteins and sugars after freezing and freeze drying. Food Research International 51, 503-509.

Doleyres, Y., Lacroix, C., 2005. Technologies with free and immobilised cells for probiotic bifidobacteria production and protection. International Dairy Journal 15,973-988.

FAO/WHO, Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations/World Health Organisation, 2002. Guidelines for the evaluation of probiotics in food. London, Ontario, Canada. April 30 and may 1, 2002.

Fooks, L.J., Gibson, G.R., 2002. Probiotics as modulators of the gut flora. British Journal of Nutrition 88 (1), S39-S49.

Furrie, E., Macfarlane, S., Kennedy, A., Cummings, J.H., Walsh, S.V., O'Niell, D.A., Macfarlane, G.T., 2005. Synbiotic therapy (*Bifidobacterium longum*/Synergy 1) initiates resolution of inflammation in patients with active ulcerative colitis: a randomised controlled pilot trial. Gut 54, 242-249.

© University of Pretoria

Hansen, L.T., Allan-Wojtas, P.M., Jin, Y.L., Paulson, A.T., 2002. Survival of calcium-alginate microencapsulated *Bifidobacterium* spp in milk and in simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Food Microbiology 19, 35-45.

Heidebach, T., Först, P., Kulozik, U., 2010. Influence of casein-based microencapsulation on freeze –drying and storage of probiotic cells. Journal of Food Engineering 98, 309-316.

Henker, J., Muller.S., Laass, M.W., Schreiner, A., Schulze, J., 2008. Probiotic *Escherichia coli* Nissle 1917 (EcN) for successful remission maintenance of ulcerative colitis in children and adolescents: an open-label pilot study. Zeitschrift fur Gastroenterologie 46 (9), 874-875.

Holzapfel, W.H., Petra Haberer., Snel, J., Schillinger, U., Huis in't veld, J.H., 1998. Overview of gut flora and probiotics. International Journal of Food Microbiology 41, 85-101.

Huis in't Veld, J.H.J., Havenaar, R., Marteau, P. H., 1994. Establishing a scientific basis for probiotic R&D. Tibtech 12, 6-8.

Ishibashi, N., Shimamura, S., 1993. Bifidobacteria: research and development in Japan. Food Technology 46: 126-135.

Jankovic, I., Sybesma, W., Phothirath, P., Ananta, E., Mercenier, A., 2010. Application of probiotics in food products-challenges and new approaches. Current Opinion in Biotechnology 21, 175-181.

Krasaekoopt, W., Bhandari, B., Deeth, H., 2003. Evaluation of encapsulation techniques for probiotics for yoghurt. International Dairy Journal 13, 3-13.

Lee, Y.K., Salminen, S., 1995. The coming of age of probiotics. Trends in Food Science and Technology 6, 241-245.

Levy, J., 2000. The effects of antibiotic use on gastrointestinal function. The American Journal of Gastroenterology 95(1), S8-S10.

© University of Pretoria

Lian, W.C., Hsiao, H, C., Chou, C.C., 2003. Viability of microencapsulated bifidobacteria in simulated gastric juice and bile solution. International Journal of Food Microbiology 86, 293-301.

Mack, D.R., Michail, S., Wei, S., McDougall, L., Hollingsworth, M.A., 1999. Probiotics inhibit enteropathogenic *E. coli* adherence *in vitro* by inducing intestinal mucin gene expression. American Journal of Physiology 276, G941–G950.

Petrovic, T., Nedovic, V., Dimitrijevic, B.S., Bugarski, B., Lacroix, C., 2007. Protection of probiotic microorganism by microencapsulation. Chemical Industry and Chemical Engineering Quaterly 13 (3), 169-174.

Picot, A., Lacroix, C., 2004. Encapsulation of Bifidobacteria in whey protein based microcapsules and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Dairy Journal 14, 505-515.

Pop, O.L., Brandau, T., Vodnar, D.C., Socaciu, C., 2012. Study of *Bifidobacterium lactis* 300b survival during encapsulation coating and freeze drying process and the release in alkaline media. Bulletin UASVM Agriculture 69 (2), 372-379.

Ramchandran, L., Shah, N.P., 2010. Characterization of functional, biochemical and textural properties of symbiotic low-fat yoghurts during refrigerated storage. LWT- Food Science and Technology 43 (5), 819-827.

Sekhon, B.S., Jairath, S., 2010. Prebiotics, probiotics and synbiotics: an overview. Journal Pharmaceutical Education and Research 1(2), 13-36.

Shah N.P., 2007. Functional cultures and health benefits (Review). International dairy Journal 17, 1262-1277.

Shamekhi, F., Shuhaimi, M., Ariff, A., Manap, Y.A., 2013. Cell viability of microencapsulated *Bifidobacterium animalis subsp. lactis* under freeze-drying, storage and gastrointestinal tract simulation conditions. Folia Microbiologica 58 (2), 91-101.

© University of Pretoria

Tannock G.W., 2001. Molecular assessment of intestinal microflora. American Journal of Clinical Nutrition 73 (Supplement 2) 410S- 414S.

Thantsha, M.S., Cloete, T.E., Moolman, F.S., Labuschagne, W.P., 2009. Supercritical carbondioxide interpolymer complexes improve survival of *Bifidobacterium longum Bb-46* in simulated gastrointestinal fluids. International Journal of Food Microbiology 129, 88-92.

Vesa, T.H., Marteau, P., Korpela, R., 2000. Lactose intolerance. Journal of the American College of Nutrition 19, 165S-175S.

© University of Pretoria

CHAPTER 1

Literature Review

© University of Pretoria

1.1 Overview

Over the years, research and food industries have contributed to the maintenance of a healthy life style by increasing the awareness about functional foods. These functional foods contain commensal microorganisms which are associated with various health benefits (Hylemon and Harder, 1998; Hooper et al., 2002; Tuohy et al., 2003; Backhed et al., 2005; Prakash et al., 2011). The beneficial roles of these commensal microorganisms can be maintained in the gastrointestinal tract (GIT) by constant ingestion of good bacteria, which are now known as probiotics (Parvez et al., 2006).

1.2 Probiotics

1.2.1 Definitions and characteristics

Recently, a proper definition of probiotics describes them as “live microorganisms which when administered in adequate amounts confer a health benefit on the host” (FAO/WHO, 2002). This definition suggests that the potential probiotic microorganism must have the following characteristics; be viable after industrial processing and after long periods of storage, be certified generally regarded as safe (GRAS), originate from the gut (improves their functionality) (Hoolihan, 2001); be able to fight off pathogens; remain viable and functional after passage through the GIT and provide beneficial effects to the individual. The first actual introduction of probiotics was done by Metchnikoff in the early 1900s, where he reported that Bulgarian peasants were much healthier and lived longer as a result of the large consumption of fermented milk, due to the health benefits carried out by the live microorganisms (Metchnikoff, 1907). In order to provide individuals with the required health benefits, probiotics are supplied as supplements or incorporated into a large variety of food products such as dairy products (yoghurt, cheese and ice-cream) and non-dairy products (cereals, non-fermented juice and sausages) (Cherie et al., 1998).

There have been debates as to what amount of probiotics is required for beneficial effects to occur. It has been reported that ingesting 100 g of the product containing a minimum amount of 10^6 to 10^7 viable cells/g daily will produce beneficial effects (Boylston et al., 2004). However, levels ranging from 10^6 to10^8 cfu/ml have been reported as the required dose for

© University of Pretoria

functional properties of probiotics to take effect (Sanders and Veld, 1999; Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). It is also important to note that the efficacy of probiotics is attributed to the different strains used, since no universal strain has been reported to provide all the proposed health benefits (Song et al., 2012). Although microorganisms like *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Escherichia coli* have been used as probiotics, the lactic acid bacterial strains are the most recognised because they can serve a dual function of being food fermenters as well as health providers (Song et al., 2012). Therefore, the most utilised probiotic strains include *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* strains. These strains are currently introduced into fermented food products, and reports have shown that they greatly reduce the severity of some gastrointestinal diseases (Anal and Singh, 2007).

1.2.2 Lactobacilli

This is the largest group of probiotic bacteria inhabiting the intestine. Lactobacilli species are described as Gram positive, acid tolerant and non spore formers which prefer anaerobic conditions but at times, they can be aerotolerant (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). Lactobacilli species are obligate fermenters which utilise carbohydrates as a source of energy to produce various end products (Serino et al., 2009). They have a DNA composition of $< 54\%$ mol GC content. This group consists of *Lactobacillus acidophilus, L. casei, L. salivarius, L. brevis, L. plantarum*, *L. delbrueckii ssp. bulgaricus* and gram positive cocci *Streptococcus thermophilus* (Sekhon and Jairath, 2010). These strains have been successfully isolated from the human intestines and have a GRAS status (Fooks and Gibson, 2002). Lactobacilli are commonly used as starter cultures in the production of yoghurt and other fermented products, and have also been incorporated into food products for beneficial purposes (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). They also release various enzymes and vitamins into intestine which improves digestion and produces lactic acid (Parvez et al., 2006). The functional benefits of the above mentioned strains have been studied and reported (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). Functions include providing balance to the gut by competing with disease causing pathogens for villi attachment sites and nutrients, strengthening immunity and alleviating various digestive diseases symptoms for example lactose intolerance, constipation and ulcerative colitis (Guarner and Malagelada, 2003). The above mentioned functions attributed to *Lactobacillus*, also apply to *Bifidobacterium*.

© University of Pretoria

1.2.3 Bifidobacteria

Bifidobacteria are gram positive, rod shaped, anaerobic, non gas producing organisms with a bifurcated morphology, hence the initial name *Bifidobacterium bifidus*. Bifidobacteria were first isolated from the faeces of breast fed infants by Tissier in 1960 (Novik et al., 2001). They are also classified as non-spore forming, non-motile bacteria which contribute to carbohydrate fermentation in the colon with the help of an enzyme fructose-6-phosphate phosphoketolase. This fermentation enables the production of acetic and lactic acids which are effective at eliminating pathogenic organisms (Sidarenka et al., 2008). Bifidobacteria grow at optimum temperatures of 37°C to 40°C and survive at an optimum pH of 6.5 to 7.0 (Reyed, 2007). In order to achieve proper isolation and cultivation of bifidobacteria in the laboratory, a complex organic media is needed. Hence, the selective medium chosen must be able to produce high recovery of bifidobacteria from pure or mixed cultures (Payne et al., 1999). Selective media like Modified De Man Rogosa Sharpe (supplemented with cysteine-HCL) and Arroyo, Martin and Cotton (AMC) have been recommended for the enumeration of bifidobacteria from pure and mixed cultures respectively (Arroyo et al., 1994; Payne et al., 1999). Since bifidobacteria are difficult to isolate and grow in laboratories, they have been assigned different genera in the past. These genera include *Bacillus, Bacteroides, Corynebacterium, Nocardia and Lactobacillus* (Fooks and Gibson, 2002). Bifidobacteria were accepted as a separate genus in 1974 and since then, they have been characterised based on their biochemical, morphological and DNA composition (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). Bifidobacteria belong to the family Actinomycete as a result of their high GC content (> 50 mol %). They make up to about more than 95% of the intestinal flora of healthy and well breast fed newborns (Lourens-Hattingh and Viljoen, 2001). This percentage increases their chances of producing beneficial health effects; as a result, they have been thoroughly researched.

Various in vitro and animal tests done on bifidobacteria, as well as their supplemented food products have shown the ability of bifidobacteria to activate immune system and alleviate digestive problems like constipation and diarrhoea (Payne et al., 1999). Studies show that health was improved because the proliferation of harmful microorganisms such as *Clostridium perfringens* and *Staphylococcus aureus* was reduced (Reyed, 2007). Just like the lactobacilli, strains of bifidobacteria are specific for the health benefits they provide.

© University of Pretoria

Therefore, this has led to the classification of all the bifidobacteria strains based on the health benefits they provide. Recently, 32 species of *Bifidobacterium* were identified from human and animal hosts. Species colonizing the human host are *B. bifidum*, *B. longum*, *B. infantis B. adolescentis, B. angulatum, B. catenulatum, B. breve* and *B. pseudocatenulatum,* while those associated with the animal hosts include *B. animalis,* B. *pseudolongum* and *B. thermophilus* (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008*;* Sidarenka et al., 2008).

Strains like *B. bifidum* and *B. longum* are of great interest because, unlike *B. lactis*, they show low tolerance to various stress factors (Ruiz et al., 2011). *Bifidobacterium longum* are gram variable cells with either long, club or dumb shaped rods which may show bifurcation. They produce convex colonies that are shiny, soft or moist (Boylston et al., 2004). *Bifidobacterium longum* ferments glucose to produce lactic and acetic acid without gas. They are anaerobes and grow at optimum temperatures between 36-38°C, but do not grow at temperatures 20°C or 47°C (Boylston et al., 2004). The genome sequence of *B. longum* has been studied and it reveals that it carries four copies of 16s rRNA gene (Schell et al., 2002). The information provided by the genome sequence can help optimise and control their growth (Song et al., 2012). *Bifidobacterium longum* has a GRAS status and their beneficial effects have been widely studied. However, most strains of *Bifidobacterium* exhibit low tolerance to stressful factors, such as those seen in the acidic environment of the GIT and in dairy products (Anal and Singh, 2007; Ruiz et al., 2011).

1.2.4 Health benefits of probiotics

Researchers have shed a lot of light on the various benefits of probiotics. Varying effects are witnessed depending on the metabolic processes of the probiotic strain used (Oelschaeger, 2010; Burgain et al., 2011). Some of the health benefits which are attributed to probiotics include relief from lactose intolerance (Buller and Grand, 1990; Shah, 1993; Vesa et al., 2000; Hoolihan, 2001; Gibson and Rastall, 2004; Suvarna and Boby, 2005), antibiotic associated diarrhoea (Shornikova et al., 1997a, 1997b; Guandalini et al., 2000; Vanderhoof, 2000; Fooks and Gibson, 2002; Reid et al., 2003; Tuohy et al., 2003; Sullivan and Nord, 2005; Sazawal et al., 2006; Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008; Prakash et al., 2011), inflammatory bowel diseases (Sartor, 1995; Gupta et al., 2000; Papadakis and Targan, 2000; Marteau, 2001; Loftus and Sandborn, 2002; Podolsky, 2002; Itzkowitz and Harpaz, 2004; Sartor,

© University of Pretoria

2004; Furrie et al., 2005; Serino et al., 2009; Burgain et al., 2011; Prakash et al., 2011) prevention from cancer (Benno and Mitsuoka,1992; Roberfroid, 2000; Saarela et al., 2000), aiding digestion by degrading complex carbohydrates, prevent antibiotic induced diarrhoea, decrease the levels of free radicals, chelate metal ions and scavenge reactive oxygen species like hydrogen peroxide (Nutraceutix, 2001) and reducing serum cholesterol levels (hypercholesterolemia) (Fooks et al., 1999; Liong and Shah, 2005b; Begley et al., 2006; Shah, 2007).

1.2.5 Mechanism of action of probiotics

The method in which probiotics confer these beneficial effects still needs to be studied. However, it is speculated that probiotics confer these benefits through three mechanisms, namely nutrient competition, release of biochemical agents and inhibition of the interaction between pathogens and the intestinal mucosa (Fooks and Gibson, 2002; Corcionivoschi et al., 2010).

Probiotic strains confer protective mechanisms by stimulating and enhancing protective functions in the intestinal epithelium (biochemical inhibition). They perform this biochemical inhibition by binding to and secreting various bactericidal substances such as lactic acid, hydrogen peroxide, bacteriocins and certain short chain fatty acids in the intestinal mucosa (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). These compounds exhibit antagonistic effects on pathogenic microbes and they act to reduce the pH levels in the intestine, block bacterial adhesion to epithelial cells, make nutrients unavailable, hence making it difficult for enteropathogens such as *E. coli*, *Bacillus* and *Listeria* to survive (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008; Corcionivoschi et al., 2010). In vitro studies have revealed the ability of certain strains of *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* to inhibit the activity of pathogenic microorganisms. Corcionivoschi et al. (2010) reported that administration of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* HN001 in animals increased immune response against *Salmonella enterica* infection. However, human cell lines which mimic intestinal barrier are being investigated for the proper explanation of how probiotics attaches to intestinal epithelium to exert these functions (Louvard et al., 1992).

The gut flora comprises of microorganisms which constantly compete for the available nutrients. Depending on the location of microbes in the gut, nutrients may be available in

© University of Pretoria

large quantities or in limited quantities. These commensal microbes are able to adhere to intestinal walls, hence prevent the adherence of pathogenic microbes (Prakash et al., 2011). The ability of commensal strains to adhere and compete for nutrients increases the chances of exerting beneficial effects (Tuomola et al., 1999).

The inherent capacity of probiotic strains to alter the immune system is essential for prevention and alleviation of digestive disorders. The presence of immunoglobulin A and an increasing macrophagic activity helps prevent the invasion of pathogenic microbes (Burgain et al., 2011). Also, specific toll-like receptors and dendritic cells present in the gut epithelial cells recognise secreted products of probiotics which may trigger an immune cascade such as upregulating anti-inflammatory cytokine production and phagocytic activity, which in turn leads to modulation of the immune system (Fooks and Gibson, 2002; Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). Studies have shown the ability of *B. lactis* HN019 and *L. rhamnosus* HN001 to stimulate or reduce the activity of cytotoxic lymphocyte, hence playing a significant role in the prevention of malignant tumours (Corcionivoschi et al., 2010).

Recently, the idea of creating genetically modified probiotics (GMP) for beneficial effects by manipulating the gut flora is an increasing topic of interest (Corcionivoschi et al., 2010). Molecular techniques involving genetic screening can provide information on probiotic strains with the ability to demonstrate multiple beneficial effects. The production of genetically modified probiotic is facing rejection by the public due to the unknown effects they may exert when introduced into an unfamiliar or uncontrolled environment (Verrips et al., 1996). Rijnen et al. (1999) investigated the introduction of a gene encoding glutamate dehydrogenase, which is involved in catabolism of *Peptostreptococcus asaccharolyticus* in *Lactobacillus lactis*, in order to improve the ability of this microorganism to produce alpha ketoglutarate from glutamate, an amino acid compound present in high amounts in cheese. Since different probiotic strains are known to exert different beneficial effects due to their unique properties, characteristics and spectrum of action, more research is needed to properly identify each unique probiotic strain, their mechanisms of action and target functions as accepted relevant to health.

© University of Pretoria

1.2.6 Steps taken to improve probiotic viability

Probiotic strains must be present at a minimum concentration of 10^6 cfu/ml in probiotic products and at the time of consumption for beneficial effects to be exerted in the colon (Sanders, 1999; Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008; Lee, 2009). These viable probiotics must be active and stable throughout the storage period of the product (Sanders, 1999). Studies have reported lower counts of probiotics in products even before the expiry date, hence; the cells die before they can provide health benefits to individuals (Suita-Cruce and Goulet, 2001). These low counts are as a result of the stressful factors encountered during manufacturing, storage, transport and during gastrointestinal transit (Thantsha et al., 2009; Brinques et al., 2011). Most probiotic strains, especially bifidobacteria are sensitive to certain internal and external stress factors (Lourens-Hattingh and Viljoen, 2001; Moolman et al., 2006). These factors include competing microorganisms, gastric acid and bile concentrations in the stomach and intestines, temperature, oxygen, light, moisture and certain solvents (Lian et al., 2002; Matilla-Sandholm et al., 2002; Piano et al., 2006; Thantsha, 2007). The sensitivity of probiotic strains to these factors makes it difficult for them to reach the colon in a stable and viable state. It is important to note that the survival of probiotics depends on the ability of a particular strain or species to tolerate or resist these stress factors (Lian et al., 2002).

In order to improve probiotic viability within food products, manufacturers have incorporated additional cells (up to 200%) into products at the time of production to make up for the loss of cells encountered during storage. This practice has, however led to an increase in cost of products (Porubcan et al., 1975). In addition to making up for loss in cells, the exclusion of oxygen has been explored by packaging the probiotic products in oxygen impermeable containers (Desmond et al., 2002). Dave and Shah (1997) showed that yoghurt inoculated with *Lactobacillus and Bifidobacterium* strains and stored in glass bottles had a 30-70% survival rate than those stored in plastic containers. This is because glass bottles are better equipped to exclude oxygen than plastic containers (Dave and Shah, 1997).

Another method which involves a two step fermentation process has been explored (Picot and Lacroix, 2004). During fermentation of dairy products, starter cultures tend to grow faster and produce acids which can decrease probiotic viability. Studies have shown that probiotic

© University of Pretoria

viability was increased when an initial fermentation was done by probiotics and a second fermentation was done by starter cultures (Lankaputhra and Shah, 1997).

In another procedure, strains are carefully selected and exposed to various stress factors to increase their survival and improve the chances of applying them in food production (Ruiz et al., 2011). Studies have revealed that various molecular, morphological, biochemical and physiological changes occur during stress adaptation of strains (Ahn et al., 2001). During oxygen exposure, probiotic strains undergo cell surface component modifications, as well as the detoxification of hydrogen peroxide by NADH oxidase as was observed in *B. lactis* Bb12 (Shin and Park, 1997). During heat shock conditions, studies have revealed gene alterations and induction of chaperones as a way of counteracting heat stress (Figure 1.1). These mechanisms of evading heat stress were seen in *B. longum* NCC 2705 and *B. breve* UCC2003 (Rezzonico et al., 2007). During acid stress, bacterial strains such as *B. longum* and *B. lactis* negate acid by using an Acid Tolerance Response (ATR), as well as a key enzyme F_0F_1-ATPase, which helps pump out protons from the cytoplasm (Figure 1.1) (Sánchez et al., 2007). Furthermore, during exposure to bile salts, bifidobacteria adapt by using efflux pumps to remove or detoxify bile from the cell membrane (Figure 1.1). In the case of *B. lactis*, bile adaptation was accrued to increased production of bile salt hydrolase, an enzyme which deconjugates bile salt (Grill et al., 2000; Gueimonde et al., 2009). These experiments provided strains with improved resistant phenotypes against stressful conditions and thus they can be applied to probiotic products.

© University of Pretoria

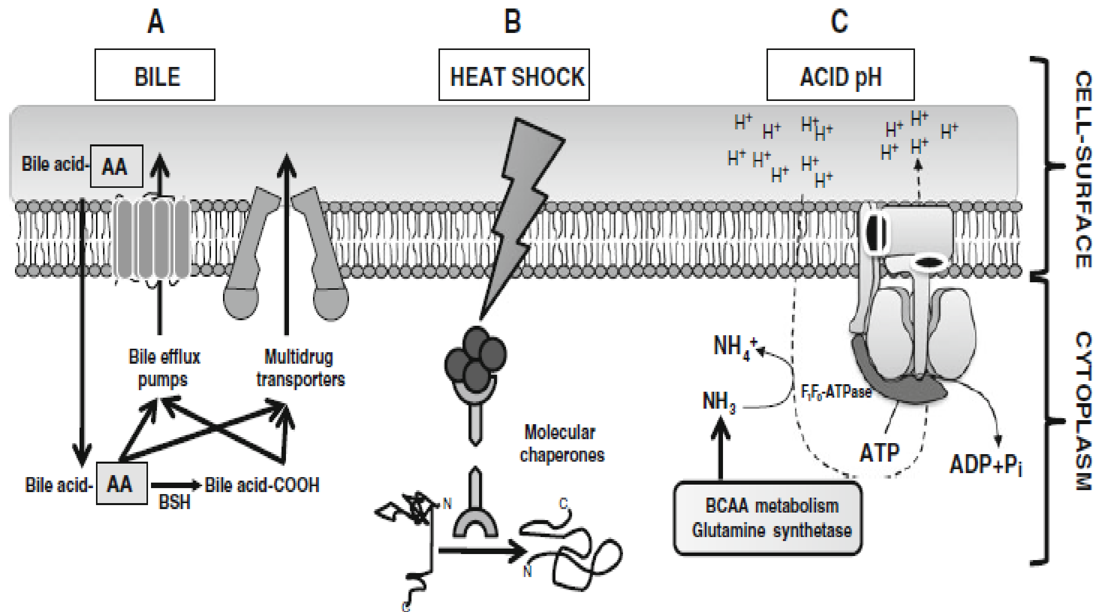


Figure 1.1: Main molecular mechanisms involved in the response of bifidobacteria to bile, heat and acidic stress conditions (Ruiz et al., 2011)

In addition to the aforementioned methods used to maintain the shelf life of probiotics, the use of prebiotics to improve probiotic viability has shown increasing interest (Gibson and Roberfroid, 1995; Sultana et al., 2000; Chávez and Ledeboer, 2007; Burgain et al., 2011; Okuro et al., 2013).

1.3 Prebiotics

Prebiotics are non-digestible foods which positively affect the host by specifically stimulating the growth and activity of beneficial bacteria in the colon while restricting the harmful ones (Fooks and Gibson, 2002; Sekhon and Jairath, 2010). In essence, the viability of probiotic is improved in products as well as in the GIT (Fooks and Gibson, 2002). It has been reported that the efficiency of prebiotics towards improving the growth of probiotics depends on the type of prebiotics and the amount used (Heydari et al., 2011). Gibson and Roberfroid (1995) reported that a substance is classified as a prebiotic if it has the following properties: it cannot be hydrolysed in the upper part of the GIT; it activates/stimulates the growth of commensal microbes and provides health benefits to the host. Since prebiotics are not living microorganisms, there is no problem with regards to their survival in the gut and in the product (Reyed, 2007). Prebiotics have been associated with improving gastrointestinal

© University of Pretoria

diseases such as constipation, irritable bowel syndrome, improving the immune system, reducing plasma triacylglycerols and absorbing divalent cations (Fiordaliso et al., 1995; Gibson and Roberfroid, 1995; Kleessen et al., 1997; Schley and Field, 2002; Cummings et al., 2003; Kelly et al., 2005; Macfarlane et al., 2007).

Some prebiotics termed non-digestible oligosaccharides/carbohydrates (NDO) are naturally occurring in food ingredients. These carbohydrates are also termed bifidogenic oligosaccharides because they selectively activate the growth of beneficial microbes (Gibson and Roberfroid, 1995). They are found in foods such as oats, legumes, artichokes, garlic, onion, banana and tomato (Macfarlane et al., 2007). Non digestible oligosaccharides are composed of 2-10 monomers which are covalently linked (Serino et al., 2009), soluble in water and in ethanol at pH 2, able to resist hydrolysis by the saliva and small intestinal enzymes, thus are accessible to the colonic bacteria for fermentation (Kelly, 2008, 2009) and their high molecular weight improves product viscosity as well their mouthfeel (Loo et al., 1999). They are low in calories, hence are used to make low caloric and diabetic food products (Serino et al., 2009). In order to increase the amount of prebiotics ingested, they are extracted from foods and used as additives in commonly purchased and ingested foodstuffs such as cereals, biscuits and other carbohydrate containing foods (Taylor et al., 1999). These oligosaccharides include among others, galacto-oligosaccharide (GOS), fructo-oligosaccharide (FOS) and inulins (Inulin type prebiotics), xylo-oligosaccharide, lactulose, isomalto-oligosaccharide and transgalacto-oligosaccharide (Holzapfel and Schillinger, 2002; Macfarlane et al., 2007).

Galacto-oligosaccharides are produced from lactose by the enzyme beta galactosidase. This enzyme produces various chain lengths with different glycosidic links such as β- (1, 4), β- (1, 3), β- (1, 2), and β- (1, 6) linkages (Gibson and Roberfroid, 1995; Cummings and Roberfroid, 1997; Fooks and Gibson, 2002). They have been incorporated into various dairy products as texture and taste enhancers due to their high solubility and good moisture retention abilities (Heavey et al., 2003; Moro et al., 2006). Malto-oligosaccharides are composed of α- D glucose molecules which are linked by α- (1-4) glycosidic linkages. They are produced by firstly treating starch molecules with isoamylase, followed by treatment with α- amylase in order to hydrolyse α- (1-4) linkages, thus producing oligosaccharides with varying lengths (Crittenden and Playne, 1996). Malto-oligosaccharides have been reported to promote the growth of bifidobacteria in human gut, while reducing the levels of *Clostridium perfringens*

© University of Pretoria

(Crittenden and Playne, 1996). Fructo-oligosaccharides comprise of one molecule of glucose and one to three molecules of fructose. The fructose molecules are linked by β-(2-1) glycosidic bonds with a terminal glucose unit (Rossi et al., 2005). These linked fructose molecules classifies FOS as an inulin prebiotics belonging to a larger group called fructans (Kelly, 2008, 2009). FOS also contain β-D-fructosyl units representing short chain (oligofructose) and medium chain (Inulin) lengths with degree of polymerization of up to 90 and 60 respectively (Bouhnik et al., 1999; Bengmark et al., 2001; Macfarlane et al., 2007). They are produced enzymatically from sucrose through transfructosylation by the help of transfructosylases and by the controlled hydrolysis of inulin from chicory (Venter, 2007). As part of the inulin type prebiotics, they play a major role in the food industry with regards to providing an increased number of probiotics for health benefits (Gibson et al., 1995).

Inulin belongs to a larger group called fructans, because they have naturally occurring oligo or polysaccharides which contains one or more β-(2-1) fructosyl-fructose linkages with mostly glycosidic bonds (Kelly, 2008). These linkages increase resistance to hydrolysis by saliva and small intestine enzymes. Hence, inulin can travel the upper GIT and reach the colon intact where it undergoes fermentation by colonic bacteria (Gibson and Roberfroid, 1995). Colonic bacteria like bifidobacteria have high enough activity of β - fructosidase which selectively breaks down glycosidic bonds, releasing fructose for their own growth (Gibson et al., 1995; Bouhnik et al., 1999). Inulin is classified into subgroups based on their degree of polymerisation (number of repeat units in an oligomer or polymer chain) (Kelly, 2008). Inulin prebiotics are produced from plant sources containing fructans, such as chicory roots and sucrose. The application of various processing technologies can produce a number of different inulin type fructans with varying strengths, weaknesses and degrees of polymerization (DP), which include oligofructose and Inulin HP (Kelly, 2008, 2009). An example is the production of high molecular weight inulin from chicory roots by hot water extraction, which produces DP ranging from 2-60 (Kelly, 2008, 2009; Kleesen et al., 1997). Fructans with DP greater than 10 are termed long chain inulin type fructans, while fructans with DP less than 10 are termed short chain inulin type fructans. Inulins can be used as ingredients in functional foods as well as dietary supplements, because they are regarded safe for consumption and they also improve texture of food (Kelly, 2008, 2009). They are found naturally in onions, garlic, wheat, banana, leeks and artichokes (Macfarlane et al., 2007). Commercially available inulin type prebiotics contain a mixture of these varying fructans; an

© University of Pretoria

example is oligofructose-enriched inulin (enrichment/mixture of inulin with oligofructose) (Gibson et al., 1995; Kleesen et al., 1997; Tuohy et al., 2001; Ping Su et al., 2007; Fritzen-Freire et al., 2012).

1.3.1 Synbiotics

The combination of probiotics and prebiotics termed synbiotics has been applied to improve the survival and viability of the probiotics in food products to provide health benefits to individuals (Gallaher and Khil, 1999; Sultana et al., 2000; Mortazavian et al., 2007; Kalliomäki, 2009; Sekhon and Jairath, 2010; Kolidas and Gibson, 2011). This is so because the prebiotics act as substrates for probiotics, thus leading to an increased number of commensal bacteria in the gut (Fooks and Gibson, 2002). Synbiotic combinations include (*Lactobacillus* GG and inulin), (*Bifidobacterium* and FOS), (*Lactobacillus acidophilus* and inulin), (*Lactobacillus*, FOS and inulin) (Fooks and Gibson, 2002). Products which contain synbiotics include Probio'stick (Probiocap), yoghurt, nutrient and chocolate bars (Attune, USA) and capsules Geneflora™ (Burgain et al., 2011). It has been reported that improved lipid metabolism and digestion are attributed to the use of products containing synbiotics (Sekhon and Jairath, 2010). A study conducted by Liong et al. (2007), reported decreased levels of total plasma, cholesterol, triacylglycerols and LDL levels in 24 hyperchloesterolemic male pigs at the eight week after ingesting synbiotic formulations containing *L. acidophilus* ATCC 4962, FOS, mannitol and inulin.

Though the aforementioned methods and formulas have helped to improve probiotic viability, studies report that maintaining the viability and stability of probiotics is still a major challenge for food industries (Mattila-Sandholm et al., 2002). However, processes which provide suitable barriers as a means of shielding the probiotic strains from stressful conditions as well as preserving their viability have been implemented. These processes include embedding the cells in immobilised biofilm, as well as the use of microencapsulation technique (Desmond et al., 2002; Picot and Lacroix, 2004; Thantsha et al., 2009).

© University of Pretoria

1.4 Microencapsulation

1.4.1 Overview

Microencapsulation is a method which entraps or packages an active material (solid, liquid, gas and living cells) in a wall material (hydrocolloids) in order to decrease the loss of viable cells by protecting them from adverse effects (Anal and Singh, 2007; Heidebach et al., 2012). These adverse effects include oxygen, certain solvents, high temperatures, pH, moisture, bacteriophage attack, negative effects of freeze-drying and freezing (Krasaekoopt et al., 2003; Burgain et al., 2011). Studies have reported the ability of microencapsulation to actively coat and protect probiotic strains, control oxidative reactions, extend shelf life, improve the release of strains at controlled rates and at specific times, shroud odours and colours and mask flavours in food industries (Chen and Chen, 2007; Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). Microencapsulation allows for the production of microcapsules with small diameters that do not negatively affect the organoleptic qualities of food products into which they are incorporated (Burgain et al., 2011). The diameter of microcapsules obtained range from micrometres to millimetres and they encourage uniform cell growth while reducing mass transfer limitations (Dembczynski and Jankowski, 2002; Franjione and Vasishtha, 1995; Jankowski et al., 1997; Gibbs et al., 1999). Release of the core from the matrix or coating material occurs either by mechanical rupture of the cell wall, fracture by heat, change in pH or temperature, solvation, or diffusion through the wall (Franjione and Vasishtha, 1995; Gibbs et al., 1999). It is important to note that the coats used for microencapsulation must be GRAS approved by the FDA (Food and Drug Administration). The coating materials must stabilize the active material, not negatively affect the active ingredient and should release active material at target site (Vasishtha, 2003). However, successful microencapsulation is highly dependent on the strain used, coating material used and the factors involved in a specific microencapsulation method (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008; Burgain et al., 2011). Various methods of microencapsulation exist, which have yielded varied results with regards to their ability to protect probiotics.

© University of Pretoria

1.4.2 Methods of microencapsulation

The methods of microencapsulation are grouped either as physical or chemical (Anal and Singh, 2007; Vidhyalakshmi et al., 2009). The chemical methods include interfacial polymerisation, in situ polymerisation and matrix polymerisation) (Vidhyalakshmi et al., 2009). The physical methods include extrusion (droplet method), emulsion (two step method), pan coating, fluidized bed coating, spray drying, spray coating, spray chilling, freeze drying and a novel microencapsulation under supercritical carbon dioxide (Moolman, et al., 2006; Thantsha et al., 2009; Heidebach et al., 2012). It is crucial that an appropriate method of microencapsulation be selected, depending on the substance to be encapsulated. Given that each method produces a characteristic microcapsule as well as its own limitations and advantages with regards to delivering the probiotic strains to the targeted area (Prakash et al., 2011). The microencapsulation techniques commonly used are explained in detail below.

1.4.2.1 Extrusion

Extrusion involves mixing probiotic cells with a hydrocolloid (e.g. alginate) and then extruding the mixture through a nozzle at a high pressure (droplet forms) into a hardening solution (e.g. calcium chloride). Extrusion produces gel beads ranging from 2 to 4 mm. The bead sizes obtained depends on the diameter of the nozzle and the viscosity of the cell-hydrocolloid mixture (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). This method is cost effective, requires little labour, produces relatively high retention of viable cells and requires no deleterious solvents. Lactobacilli and bifidobacteria have been encapsulated by this method with other materials like whey proteins and xanthan-gellan mixture (Groboillot et al., 1994; Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010).

1.4.2.2 Emulsion

Emulsion was first introduced by Nilsson et al. (1983) and it involves entrapping probiotic cells by a water/oil emulsion (Sheu and Marshall, 1993). This method requires the mixture of the discontinuous phase (probiotic cell and hydrocolloid) and the continuous phase (any vegetable oil). This mixture is homogenised to form the water/oil emulsion, to which an

© University of Pretoria

emulsifier (Tween 80) is added to improve homogeneity. Calcium chloride is added to break the emulsion, thereby producing instant gelation while stirring. The microcapsules obtained are collected by centrifugation, and they range from 20 µm to 2 mm (Heidebach et al., 2012). Studies have shown that the capsule size can be controlled by adjusting the speed of the magnetic stirrer and maintaining the viscosity ratio between the vegetable oil and alginate (Heidebach et al., 2012; Krasaekoopt et al., 2003). Lactobacilli have been encapsulated in calcium alginate gels using this method (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010).

1.4.2.3 Spray drying

Spray drying is most commonly used in food industries and it involves converting liquid substances to dried powders. Spray drying was first utilised in the 1930's to encapsulate flavours, produce coffee extracts and detergents (Peighambardoust et al., 2011; Chávarri et al., 2012). It is utilised as a long term preservation technique for probiotic cultures, it is highly energy efficient and offers high productivity at low costs which ensures easy industrial applications (Petrovic et al., 2007; Peighambardoust et al., 2011). However, the use of spray drying for encapsulating probiotics for food application is still a challenge as a result of the low survival rate of the probiotic strains witnessed during drying (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). This method exposes the bacterial cells to high temperatures as well as dehydration step which lead to DNA and cytoplasmic membrane damage (Petrovic et al., 2007). The high temperature utilised in this method limits its use on bifidobacteria species (Picot and Lacroix, 2004). Inactivation of bacterial cells by temperature could be due to loss of genetic material. Inactivation by dehydration occurs as a result of drying which removes water from cell components (Peighambardoust et al., 2011). Water is necessary for maintaining various cell components such as lipid bilayer and cytoplasmic membrane which are the most sensitive and thus are targets for dehydration induced damage (Riveros et al., 2009).

The basic steps of spray drying are preparation of aqueous solution, homogenisation, atomization and dehydration of the atomized particles (Burgain et al., 2011). Preparing the aqueous solution involves dispersing core material into a polymer (solvent + shell material). The aqueous solution is homogenised by applying pressure. At this point, the core material is captured inside the wall material forming a stable emulsion. This is followed by atomization, which is a very critical step during spray drying because the liquid is atomized into droplets

© University of Pretoria

by bringing them in contact with hot air in a drying chamber (Peighambardoust et al., 2011). Depending on the type of spray dryer used, the solvent is then evaporated based on the air flow pattern (Co-current, counter current or mixed flow) (Peighambardoust et al., 2011; Chávarri et al., 2012). However, most spray dryers are designed to use the co-current air flow because this increases rapid surface evaporation and it is safe for heat sensitive materials (Chávez and Ledeboer, 2007; Peighambardoust et al., 2011; Chávarri et al., 2012). After evaporation, the dried sample is passed to the cyclone powder collector and retrieved in the collection vessel (Burgain et al., 2011). The limitations to using spray drying have been overcome by optimising and maintaining a low outlet air temperature which is the main reason for viability loss in cells (Picot and Lacroix, 2004).

1.4.2.4 Freeze drying

Freeze drying, like spray drying, is used for the long term preservation of various probiotic cultures. It is used to preserve immobilised and non-immobilised strains (Petrovic et al., 2007). Freeze drying involves freezing the culture, followed by the removal of water by sublimation under high vacuum (Carvalho et al., 2004). It results in the formation of ice crystals, as well as an increased salt concentration within and around the cells. This causes damage to the cell structure as a result of changes in fatty acid and protein structure (Chen et al., 2006). In order to prevent cell damage, compounds known as cryoprotectants have been utilised. These cryoprotectants include skim milk, glucose, glycerol, lactose, trehalose and inositol (Capela et al., 2006). Cryoprotectants associated with protecting cells during desiccation are grouped into three categories. These include protectants that penetrate the cell wall and membrane (glycerol), those that penetrate cell wall but not the membrane (amino acids, disaccharides and oligosaccharides) and those that do not penetrate the cell wall nor the membrane (polysaccharides and proteins) (Carvalho et al., 2004). Studies have reported that these compounds lower the transition temperature of the dried membranes by replacing water between lipid head groups, which in turn prevents the leakage of intracellular substances from cells (Chen et al., 2006). Disaccharides (lactose and sucrose) inhibit free radicals which cause viability loss when lyophilised bacterial cells are exposed to air, while the amino groups of amino acids (cysteine) react with the carboxyl group of probiotic strains, thus stabilizing the protein structures (Champagne et al., 1991).

© University of Pretoria

It is important to note that though cryoprotectants have been used to protect cells, research has also focused on the use of emulsions to improve the protection of probiotic strains during freeze drying. Dianawati et al. (2013) reported the use of emulsions containing various cryoprotectants for the protection of *Bifidobacterium longum* 1941. Significant survival rates have been reported for *Lactobacillus paracasei* subsp. *paracasei* suspended in emulsions before freeze drying (Heidebach et al., 2010). The method of emulsion requires a stable water/oil system and depending on the encapsulating material and drying solvent used, protection of probiotic strains can be achieved (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). However, the use of solvents like dichloromethane is less explored. Dichloromethane (DCM) is widely used as an extractant in food and pharmaceutical industries (Fouad et al., 2011; Miller and Gil, 2012). Dichloromethane is a suitable solvent for this study because it lacks oxygen atoms, has good solubilisation abilities, it is highly volatile, non-flammable, can dissolve various materials, has a low boiling point and enthalpy of vaporization of 39.8°C and 28 kJ/mol respectively (Methylene chloride EHC 164, 1996; Olvera-Bello et al., 2010). It has rarely been used in the microencapsulation of probiotics, possibly as a result of its toxicity to both human and bacteria (Miller and Gil, 2012). With regards to its toxicity in humans, DCM has been grouped with the group II solvents by the International Conference on Harmonization (ICH). Group II solvents are considered less harmful with an approved exposure of 6 mg/day; hence exposure must be reduced to avoid toxic effects (Miller and Gil, 2012). With regards to its toxicity to bacterial cells, studies have reported that certain bacterial strains such as *Dehalobacterium formicoaceticum* (strictly anaerobic bacteria) have the ability to degrade and utilize DCM as a source of carbon and energy (Mägli et al., 1996). Mägli et al. (1996) reported that DCM is one of the chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons known to support the growth of strictly anaerobic bacteria. Looking at these reports, the possibility that DCM may not be detrimental to bifidobacteria, which are also a strict anaerobe; as well of its ability to solubilize the lipid based coating material used in the current study is worth investigating.

1.4.2.5 Spray coating

Spray coating method involves spraying of a liquid coating material over a core material (usually solid), which is already kept in motion in a vessel by the injection of air. This leads to solidification and formation of a layer at the surface. The properties of the coating material

© University of Pretoria

can be influenced depending on the direction or angle from which the material was injected (Champagne and Fustier, 2007). Spray coating has been used for the encapsulation and protection of probiotics during exposure to stressful environments (Gouin, 2004; Doleyres and Lacroix, 2005). Spray coating is easy to scale up and it has been adapted to allow for multiple layers of coating for improved probiotic protection. However, there is always a risk of increased cost as it is a technique in need of skilled personnel (Burgain et al., 2011).

1.4.2.6 Spray chilling

Spray chilling, just like spray coating involves spraying a lipid based coating material onto a solid or dry core material. A cooling air temperature (10°C to 50°C) is used to improve solidification of the lipid coating. There have been limited reports on the use of spray chilling; however, it has been used for the encapsulation of heat sensitive materials such as probiotics (Gibbs et al., 1999). Improved protection was reported when *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and prebiotics (inulin and polydextrose) were encapsulated in a lipid microparticle by spray chilling (Okuro et al., 2013).

1.4.2.7 Encapsulation under supercritical carbondioxide

Encapsulation of probiotics using supercritical fluids is a novel technique which has been recently introduced in food and pharmaceutical industries because it presents better advantages than the commonly used methods. This method of encapsulation is well suited for the encapsulation of probiotic strains because it does not expose the strains to high temperature, oxygen, water or any other solvents (Moolman et al., 2006). Above certain critical temperatures and pressures, supercritical fluids act like gases and compressible liquids which take the shape of their container (Demirbas, 2001). Hence, they have both gaseous and liquid like properties, with densities of 0.1 to 1 g/ml and lower viscosity and surface tension than solvents (Moshashaee et al., 2000; Demirbas, 2001). Compounds such as carbondioxide, acetone and propane have been utilised as fluids in supercritical application processes. The most utilised compound in pharmaceutical and food applications is carbon dioxide (Demirbas, 2001).

© University of Pretoria

Carbon dioxide is a good solvent, inexpensive, non-toxic, easy to remove from products and easy to recycle. It also has relatively low critical temperature and pressure of 31°C and 73 bar respectively (Hénon et al., 1999). Supercritical carbon dioxide ($ScCO_2$) is produced when CO_2 is compressed at a high atmospheric pressure (Hsieh and Ofori, 2007). The nonpolar solvent nature of supercritical CO_2 limits its use in dissolving polar molecules (Sarrade et al., 2003). This method of encapsulation only process polymers with low molar masses, which are associated with poor barrier qualities thus making them unable to protect sensitive core materials. This drawback was counteracted when an interpolymer complex was formed using Poly (vinyl pyrrolidone) (PVP) and Poly (Vinylacetate-co-crotonic acid (PVAc-CA), which led to improved barrier qualities (Moolman et al., 2006) Supercritical carbondioxide has been used for the successful encapsulation of *B. lactis* Bb12, *B. longum* Bb-46 and indomethacin (Moolman et al., 2006; Thantsha et al., 2009).

1.4.3 Materials used for probiotic encapsulation

Successful microencapsulation is based on the type of material or polymer used. The specific microparticle or capsule formed depends on the type of material used and this will also determine how the core materials are released. The encapsulating materials utilised must be approved by the FDA, have a GRAS status for food applications, possess good mechanical strength and show good compatibility with the core material (Reineccius, 2004). These encapsulating materials can function as shell materials (shields active materials from environmental stresses), emulsifiers and food additives (Corcoran et al., 2004; Burgain et al., 2011). Some encapsulating materials commonly used are discussed below.

1.4.3.1 Alginate

Alginate is a polysaccharide naturally derived from algae. It is composed of β-D-mannuronic and α-L-guluronic acids. Alginate has been used extensively in microencapsulation processes because it is not toxic and has been accepted as a food additive (Sheu and Marshall, 1993; Anal et al., 2003). The most accepted of the alginate hydrogels is the calcium alginate combination because it is inexpensive, as well as non-toxic. This combination forms an interior gelation that allows the immobilisation or entrapment of probiotic cells (Hansen et al., 2002). Various researchers have reported the utilization of calcium alginate to

© University of Pretoria

microencapsulate *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* spp (Sultana et al., 2000; Dembczynski and Jankowski, 2002; Chandramouli et al., 2004). It has been observed that cell viability depends on the size of microcapsule and gel concentration used. Chang and Zhang (2002) coated *L. acidophilus* in a mixture of sodium alginate and hydroxypropyl cellulose at a ratio of 9:1. Results showed that the strains were not released in the colon as expected, due to sensitivity of alginate to acidic environments (Chang and Zhang, 2002). Also, in most cases, the microcapsules obtained had pores on their surfaces which are not desired for the protection of probiotic strains from external stresses (Burgain et al., 2011). Nonetheless, these limitations can be overcome by adding different additives or compounds like starch to improve protection of probiotic strains (Sun and Griffiths, 2000).

1.4.3.2 K- carrageenan

Carrageenan is a polymer which is naturally extracted from marine red algae. This polymer is made up of repeating D-galactose-4- sulphate and 3, 6- anhydro-D-galactose units (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). These units are connected by alternating α1-3 and β1-4 glycosidic linkages (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). K-Carrageenan serves as a gelling agent and a food additive. In order to use this material for probiotic cell encapsulation, a temperature of about 40°C – 50°C is required, at which cells are added to the polymer mixture (Chávarri et al., 2012). Gelation occurs after cooling of the mixture. The microcapsules obtained are stabilised by addition of potassium ions (Anal and Singh, 2007). Although the beads or microcapsules obtained by this material maintains the bacterial cells in a viable state, reports have shown that the beads produced are weak and cannot withstand stressful conditions (Chen and Chen, 2007) Studies have shown that encapsulation of both *B. bifidum* and *B. infantis* in k-carrageenan improved their survival in frozen ice milk which was stored for 10 weeks at -20°C (Kailasapathy, 2002). Audet et al. (1991) also showed that a combination of locust bean gum and k-carrageenan (2:1) improved survival of *Lactobacillus* because the gel beads were strengthened.

1.4.3.3 Starch

Starch consists of glucose units joined together by glycosidic bonds. Starch is mainly composed of amylose (linear glucose polymer joined by α-1-4 glycosidic bonds) and

© University of Pretoria

amylopectin (branched glucose polymer joined by α-1-4 and α-1-6 glycosidic bonds (Burgain et al., 2011). Probiotics like bifidobacteria can adhere to starch granules; as such they can be used as a vehicle for delivery of viable probiotics into the colon (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). A type of starch known as resistant starch also has prebiotic functions and can deliver probiotics into the colon, since it is not digested in the small intestine (Anal and Singh, 2007).

1.4.3.4 Cellulose acetate phthalate

Cellulose acetate phthalate is a polymer derived from cellulose and it has been used for the encapsulation and controlled release of drugs (Mortazavian et al., 2008). Cellulose acetate phthalate can be used for the encapsulation and protection of probiotics during exposure to simulated gastrointestinal conditions, as it does not disintegrate at acidic pH but becomes more soluble at higher pH (Fávaro-Trindade and Grosso, 2002; Burgain et al., 2013).

1.4.3.5 Gellan gum and Xanthan gum

Gellan gum is a polysaccharide derived from *Pseudomonas elodea*, which consists of repeating units of either glucose, glucuronic acid and rhamnose, joined together by α-1-3 glycosidic bond (Chen and Chen, 2007). Xanthan gum is derived from *Xanthomonas campestris* and consists of glucose, mannose and glucuronic acid (Sun and Griffiths, 2000). A combination of gellan and xanthan gum has been used for the encapsulation of probiotics because they do not easily disintegrate in acidic conditions (Sultana et al., 2000).

1.4.3.5 Chitosan

Chitosan is mainly composed of glucosamine units which can polymerize by the means of cross linking in the presence of anions and polyanions (Burgain et al., 2011). Chitosan is preferably used as a strengthening agent rather than an actual coat because on its own, the protection of probiotic is greatly reduced. Studies show that the encapsulation of probiotics with alginate and chitosan provided better protection in simulated gastrointestinal conditions (Chávarri et al., 2010).

© University of Pretoria

1.4.3.6 Gelatin and Milk proteins

Gelatin is a protein gum derived by partial hydrolysis of collagen, which sets to an irreversible gel when cooled (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). Its versatile properties allow for its combination with other encapsulating materials such as gellan gum, for the encapsulation of probiotics (Anal and Singh, 2007). Milk proteins have been used as a delivery system for probiotics in food industries, due to their natural properties. They are divided into caseins and whey proteins, of which the latter is more heat sensitive and thus affects the stability of emulsions (Picot and Lacroix, 2004).

The above mentioned materials are either derived from seaweed, plants, bacteria or animal (Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010).

1.4.3.7 Lipid based coating materials

Notably, the use of lipid materials for microencapsulation is yet to be fully investigated, possibly because of their inability to dissolve in polar solvents (Gouin, 2004; Heidebach et al., 2012). Studies have shown that encapsulation of probiotics using lipids has been mostly achieved by mixing the cells with molten fat, followed by cooling. However, dispersing the cells in oil poses a great challenge and has often failed (Picot and Lacroix, 2004). In addition, premature melting at high temperatures may make separation problematic; hence the application has been limited to solid foods (Heidebach et al., 2012). Modler and Villa-Garcia (1993) reported unsuccessful protection of probiotics encapsulated with butterfat during storage in frozen yoghurt. However, probiotics encapsulated in cocoa butter were slightly protected during storage in fermented and non fermented oat drinks (Lahtinen et al., 2007). Lipids such as compritol ATO 888, gelucire, precirol ATO 5 and stearic acid all have a GRAS (generally regarded as safe) status. They have recently been applied for the encapsulation and release of drug as they are water insoluble and non swellable, thus they can protect active agents during exposure to stressful environments (Özyazici et al., 2006; Patel et al., 2009; Gowda et al., 2010; Fouad et al., 2011). The use of these materials is discussed briefly below.

© University of Pretoria

1.4.3.7.1 Compritol

Compritol is a waxy material which belongs to the group glyceryl behenate (GBH) (glycerol ester bonded to behenate groups). It comprises of a mixture of mono (18%), di (52%) and triglycerides (28%) of behenic acid (Li et al., 2006). Compritol is highly hydrophobic (Hydrophillic-Lipophillic balance of 2) and has a melting temperature between 69°C and 74°C (Fini et al., 2011). It was initially used as a lubricant for tablets (Li et al., 2006; Sutanata et al., 1995), but recent applications such as direct compression and hot melt coating have utilised compritol as an important excipient used for sustained release of drugs (Barthelemy et al., 1999). Studies showed that the combination of Compritol 888 ATO with pectin (polysaccharide) was successful as colon targeted drug delivery system (Patel et al., 2009).

1.4.3.7.2 Carnauba wax

Carnauba is a waxy material which comprises of fatty alcohols (10%-16%), hydrocarbons (1%-3%) and a mixture of fatty acid esters (80%-85%). It has a melting temperature between 82°C - 86°C (Fini et al., 2011; Özyacizi et al., 2006). Carnauba is a non-toxic substance, which has also been reported to be hypoallergenic in nature. Carnauba is only broken down by certain solvents but is however water impenetrable, which indicates that its durability is able to create an environment devoid of stress for an active agent (Fini et al., 2011).

1.4.3.7.3 Gelucire and Vegetal

Gelucire comprises of a mixture of glyceryl mono-, di- and tristearates. Gelucires are inert and waxy substances used as excipients for sustained and controlled release of drugs into the colon (Moes, 1993; Sutanata et al., 1995). They have low melting temperatures (from 33°C to 65°C) and Hydrophillic-Lipophillic balance (HLB) values ranging from 1-18 (Sheu and Hsia, 2001). This indicates that those with low HLB can delay the release of compounds and those with high HLB can quickly release the compounds (Sheu and Hsia, 2001). Gelucires have been commonly used for drug delivery because they are biocompatible, biodegradable, no solvents required and do not show gastric irritation (Porter and Charman, 2001).

© University of Pretoria

Vegetal is a glyceryl distearate produced from vegetables with melting temperatures between 53°C-58°C. It comprises of mono, di and triglyceride contents of (33%, 37% and 30% respectively) (Gattefossé, technical and material data sheets, 2010). Vegetal can be used as a dietary supplement and for oral drug delivery (as a taste masking agent and a modified release agent) and thus is certified safe for human consumption. It is also a non polar fatty acid which is also insoluble in water but can be dissolved by solvents like dichloromethane and ethanol (Gattefossé, technical and material data sheets, 2010).

1.5 Food products containing encapsulated probiotics

The production and introduction of encapsulated probiotics into various food products has become popular since consumers desire functional foods that will provide health benefits to them (Mortazavian et al., 2007). Encapsulated probiotics have been introduced into foods such as mayonnaise, chocolate, sausages, biscuits, fruit juices and most commonly, dairy products (Khalil and Mansour, 1998; Ainsley et al., 2007; Ding and Shah, 2008; Allgeyer et al., 2010; Possemiers et al., 2010). Probiotics are sensitive to heat and thus are incorporated into dairy products which are stored under refrigeration. Dairy products are healthy, easily accessible and quick to consume (Allgeyer et al., 2010; Burgain et al., 2011). The most common dairy products are briefly discussed below.

1.5.1 Frozen ice cream

The high acidity of the product and freeze injury encountered in ice cream has made incorporation of probiotics very challenging. However, encapsulation of probiotics has so far averted these challenges (Chen and Chen, 2007). Studies have shown that encapsulation of probiotics not only enhanced viability in ice cream but had no negative impact on the sensory quality of the product (Godward and Kailasapathy, 2003b). Homayouni et al. (2008) also demonstrated that the high amount of total solid found in ice cream and the addition of prebiotic further improved viability of probiotics.

© University of Pretoria

1.5.2 Cheese

It has been reported that cheese, especially cheddar has the potential to carry and protect probiotics from acidic stresses due to its high fat content (Stanton et al., 1998). Studies have reported that microencapsulation is not essential for increasing viability of probiotics in cheddar cheese (Kailasapathy, 2002). However, in the case of fresh cheese, it is necessary to encapsulate probiotics before incorporation, due to the low pH of the product (Godward and Kailasapathy, 2003a; Kailasapathy, 2002). Studies have shown that encapsulation of bifidobacteria before incorporation into cheese, not only protected the cells, but also did not negatively affect the sensorial properties of the cheese (Dinakar and Mistry, 1994; Stanton et al., 1998; Özer et al., 2009).

1.5.3 Yoghurt

Of the dairy products ingested for health benefits, yoghurt is the most common, because its sensorial qualities have the most effect on consumers (Shah, 2000). Yoghurt is known to come from the word jugurt (Turkish) and is consumed worldwide (Tamime and Robinson, 1999). Yoghurt is made from raw milk extracted from cows, goats and sheep. Since raw milk has its own natural lactic acid bacteria, it is important that it is free from air contaminants or antimicrobials, as they would inhibit the bacterial cultures (Lee and Lucey, 2010). Inhibition of the bacterial cultures can lead to unfavourable tastes, subsequent rejection by the consumers and ultimately cause economic losses. The beneficial effects of yoghurt have made it very popular in various countries of the world, of which it is given different names (Chen and Chen, 2007). There are two major types of yoghurt and they include set and stirred style yoghurts. Both types of yoghurt are produced through the same processing steps (Figure 1.2) (Lee and Lucey, 2010). The only difference lies in the fact that set yoghurt forms a continuous gel structure during fermentation while the gel formed in stirred yoghurt is disrupted by agitation following fermentation and cooling (Tamime and Robinson, 1999).

With the increased awareness of yoghurt came the need for regulations which state, what should be in yoghurt and how it must be treated (USDA, 2001). All food additives added to yoghurt must have a GRAS status; yoghurt must not be bitter, rancid or unpleasant, must have a homogenous, smooth and firm texture (USDA, 2001). In 2002, the Food and

© University of Pretoria

Agriculture Organization (FAO) set standards which demand that yoghurt must be a product of fermentation by *Lactobacillus delbrueckii spp bulgaricus* and *Streptococcus thermophilus*, and microorganism claim must specify at least 10^6 cfu/g.

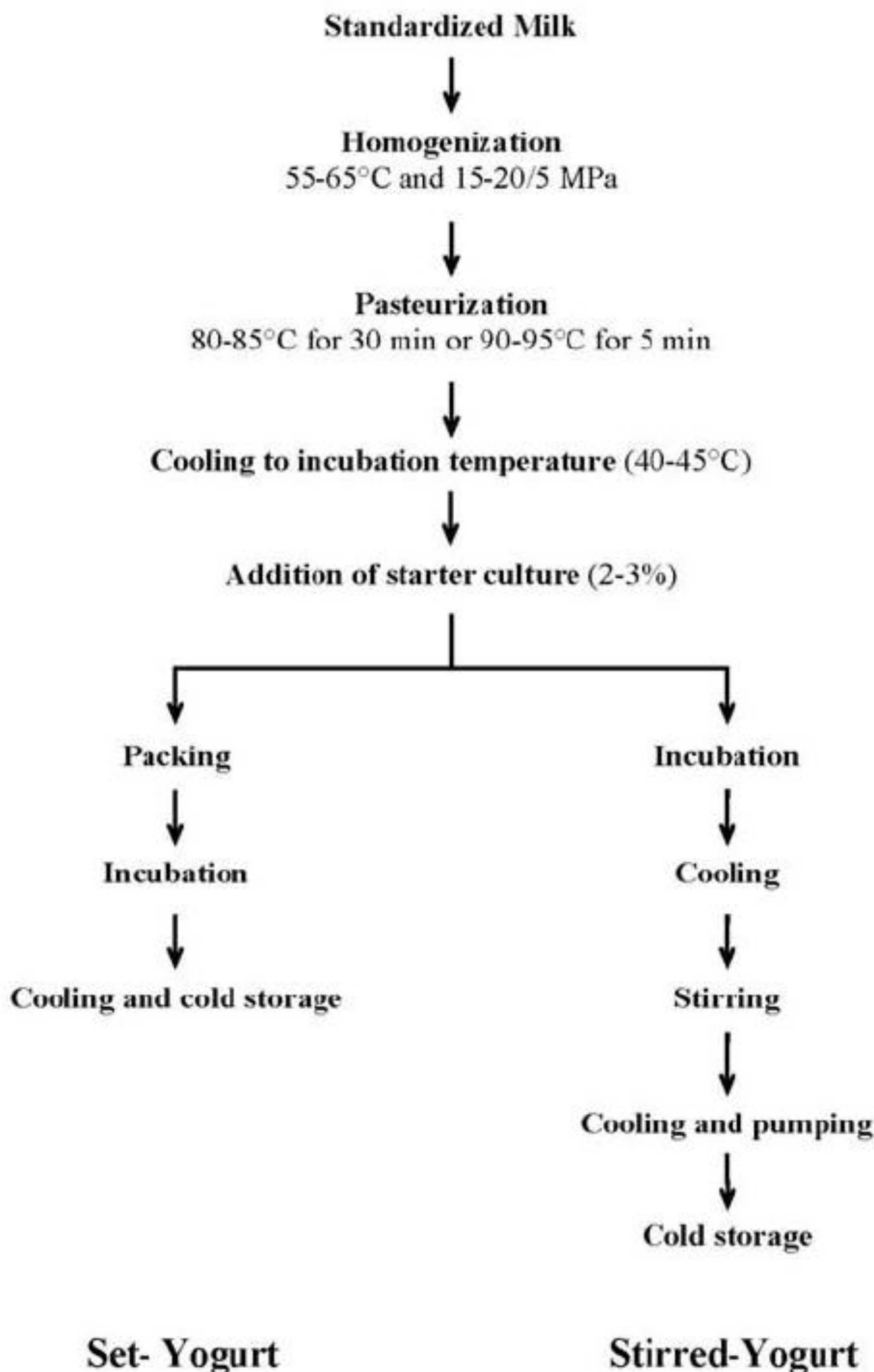


Figure 1.2: Processing steps for the production of set and stirred style yoghurts (Lee and Lucey, 2010).

© University of Pretoria

The desire to make yoghurt an accessible but functional food product, led to the introduction of probiotics. Unfortunately, studies have reported that the probiotic strains do not survive in yoghurt (Heller, 2001). This is due to factors which include the low pH level (4.2 - 4.6), acid produced during refrigeration storage and antimicrobial substances produced by the starter cultures (Shah, 2000; Heller, 2001). In an attempt to reduce the factors mentioned above, a two-step fermentation procedure was introduced. This involved an initial fermentation by probiotics, then fermentation by starter cultures, as this improved probiotic survival (Lankaputhra and Shah, 1997). In order to improve probiotic survival in yoghurt, other researchers found microencapsulation to be more effective (Sun and Griffiths, 2000; Picot and Lacroix, 2004). Furthermore, the encapsulation of probiotics with prebiotics became an even more promising method for probiotic improvement (Capela et al., 2006; Burgain et al., 2011). Addition of prebiotics is known to improve the sensorial qualities of yoghurt as they are carbohydrate derived fat replacers (Surisuvor et al., 2013). Since yoghurt is known for its therapeutic and nutritional values, it is important that the probiotic cultures present are properly quantified and its sensorial properties evaluated, before it is released into the market (Hootman, 1992; Gonzalez et al., 2011). With regards to post acidification during storage of yoghurt, studies have reported that the addition of probiotics slows down post acidification (Kailasapathy et al., 2008).

1.6 Methods for quantification of probiotics in foods

Maintaining the shelf life of probiotic food products is very essential; as this will enable the provision of their health benefits to consumers. Shelf life is the length of time in which the quality of food product is considered fit for consumer consumption. Shelf life maintenance requires; quantification of viable probiotics in the food products and the sensorial evaluation of the foods to which these probiotics are incorporated.

An improved assessment of probiotics in foods requires the use of detection methods which are cost effective, easy to perform and have higher sensitivity (lower detection limits). There are various methods of analysing and quantifying probiotics cultures and this will depend on the type of strain to be quantified, the enumeration method used, the technology and equipment and the objective of the experiment. Since various strains have specific

© University of Pretoria

characteristics, metabolic activities and growth parameters, they may require a combination of the methods, some of which will be briefly discussed.

1.6.1 Conventional method

Plate count method has been used as a traditional way of determining and estimating the number of viable probiotic cultures by means of culturing on selective media (O' Sullivan, 1999; Auty et al., 2001; Lahtinen et al., 2006). Variations of plate counting include spread and pour plating techniques, of which the latter limits the exposure of sensitive cells to oxygen, thus improving their growth (Collee et al., 1971; O' Sullivan, 1999; Madigan and Martinko, 2006). Plate counting is still the most common method used because it is cost effective, easily accessible and allows for biochemical and physiological analyses of bacterial cells (Lahtinen et al., 2006). However, it is a laborious, time consuming method that requires long incubation times. It is also associated with clumping of bacterial cells, and only counts live cells capable of growing on a selective medium, thus dormant cells remain undetected, which lead to underestimation of numbers of bacterial cells (O' Sullivan, 1999; Auty et al., 2001; Lahtinen et al., 2006). Plate counting has been used in conjunction with certain biochemical and molecular methods which enable detection of dormant cells (Bunthoff and Abee, 2002; Macfarlane and Macfarlane, 2004; Lahtinen et al., 2006; Kramer et al., 2009; Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). These methods include microscopy, flow cytometry, microplate fluorochrome assay, quantitative real time PCR, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and fluorescent in situ hybridisation (FISH) (Maidek et al., 2001; Wagner et al., 2003; Ventura et al., 2003; Macfarlane and Macfarlane, 2004; Biggerstaff, 2006; Lahtinen et al., 2006; Garner et al., 2009; Sekhon and Jairath, 2010). Some of which will be briefly discussed.

1.6.2 Biochemical methods

1.6.2.1 Fluorescent microscopy

Fluorescent microscopy has been utilised over the years to study cell structures and their viability in relation to encapsulation for improved probiotic protection (Dykstra, 1992; Madigan and Martinko, 2006; Moolman et al., 2006; Allan-Wojtas et al., 2008). This method

© University of Pretoria

involves staining of the bacterial cells with fluorescent dyes, which is accompanied by a visual imaging of the stained cells by a fluorescent microscope such as the confocal scanning laser microscope (CSLM) (Auty et al., 2001; Hibbs, 2004a; Alakomi et al., 2005). Fluorescent stains such as Live/Dead BacLight™ kit enables the differentiation between live and dead bacterial cells (Lee et al., 2009). This kit contains two nucleic acid dyes, propidium iodide (red fluorescent dye) and SYTO 9 (green fluorescent dye). SYTO9 stains all cells irrespective of the condition of the cell membrane. When propidium iodide (PI) is used, it replaces SYTO9 and stains only cells with compromised membranes. Hence, loss of membrane integrity allows penetration of PI across the membrane to stain the nucleic acid red (Auty et al., 2001; Lahtinen et al., 2006). The Live/Dead bacterial kit has been used for analysing sensitive samples like probiotic cultures, as it permits dual staining of probiotic cells for accurate viability testing based on the condition of the cell membrane (Jepras et al., 1995; Lahtinen et al., 2006). In combination with this staining, live and dead bacteria cells have also been distinguished using flow cytometry and microplate fluorochrome assay (Alakomi et al., 2005).

1.6.2.2 Flow cytometry and microplate fluorochrome assay

Flow cytometry quantifies bacterial viability by separating bacteria according to their differences in membrane integrity. Membrane integrity differentiates live, dead and damaged cells by allowing or excluding the binding of fluorescent dyes to the nucleic acid (Auty et al., 2001; Paparella et al., 2012). The principle of flow cytometry involves analysing particles flowing in a single file in a stream of fluid while being intercepted by light source (usually arc lamps and lasers). The light source is reflected as a narrow beam of light at specific wave lengths, which are filtered and transmitted into photomultiplier tubes to detect various fluorescent dyes (Bunthof et al., 2001). Using light scattering, excitation and emission of the fluoresced molecules, thousands of cells are analysed per second and multiparameter data is obtained (Bunthof et al., 2001). The light scattered by cells during flow cytometry analysis are reported as forward scatter (relates to cell size) and side scatter (relates to internal structure of cells/ granularity of particles) (Veal et al., 2000). Fluorescent dyes can be utilised for membrane integrity assessment (PI and ethidium bromide) or for viability assessment {carboxyfluorescein diacetate (cFDA), TOTO series (TOTO 1) and SYTOX series (SYTO9)} (Rault et al., 2007; Paparella et al., 2008). These fluorescent dyes have

© University of Pretoria

been used singly or in combination to estimate physiological states of cells such as membrane integrity, cell respiration and metabolic activity (Veal et al., 2000; Auty et al., 2001; Münoz et al., 2009). The advantages of using flow cytometry are that large number of cells are analysed individually and at a fast rate. However, the flow cytometer is very complex and it requires that samples are clean and must not contain interfering particles which limit accuracy. Furthermore, operating the instrument requires personnel with an adequate understanding of the principles and operating system of the machine in order to interpret accurate results (Ormerod, 2000).

On the other hand, microplate fluorochrome assay has been used to replace laborious and extensive techniques while providing distinctions between live and dead cells (Alakomi et al., 2005; Masco et al., 2007). This technique allows a variety of experiments to be measured at the same time. This technique is used in conjunction with multiwell plates like the 96 well plates and it measures absorbance, fluorescence intensity and polarisation, luminescence and time resolved fluorescence. Light passes through an excitation filter, through a light guide to reach the plate well, and then the light is emitted back into another light guide and through an emission filter to the detector. A standard curve is often used to determine the value of the experimental samples (Masco et al., 2007).

In addition to quantifying probiotics in foods, one must also consider the possible changes which may occur in the food products over time during storage due to their presence. These changes might affect the organoleptic properties of the foods into which they are incorporated. Therefore, in order to preserve the quality of food products during storage, its sensory and physico-chemical characteristics must be evaluated.

1.7 Sensorial and physico-chemical evaluation of probiotic foods

Hootman (1992) explained sensorial evaluation as a method which measures the attributes of food products by using trained human subjects as well as instruments. Sensorial evaluation is a descriptive method which emerged in the early 1990's and has focused on analysing the flavour, texture, aroma, colour and general appearance of food products (Hootman, 1992). This descriptive method has been applied to foods such as yoghurt as a way of correlating its sensorial properties to consumer acceptance and preference (Harper et al., 1991; Rohm et al.,

© University of Pretoria

1994; Ott et al., 2000). The results obtained provide industries with an in-depth knowledge of what consumers would prefer. As already mentioned, this analysis requires human subjects or panellists whom are trained for months to act as scientific instruments to provide accurate and objective evaluations of various food samples. There are six steps to which panellists are trained and they include recruiting and screening potential panellists, organising an orientation session, conduct further screening sessions, developing descriptive terms and evaluation scales, determining the reproducibility and consistency of panellist rating and finally using panellists to evaluate samples (Lawless and Heymann, 1998). The descriptive terms used to define food properties are not definite, as they change in relation to how well the panellists utilise their five senses (taste, smell, touch, sound and sight) (Lawless and Heymann, 1998).

On the other hand, studies have also shown that descriptive analysis has been used to correlate instrumental measurements (physico-chemical analysis) to sensorial analysis performed by panellists (Ott et al., 2000). Food industries have developed interest in the use of instruments to analyse the micro and macrostructures of food (Mortazavian et al., 2009). Physico-chemical analysis provides a better understanding of the sensorial qualities of food in cases where the panellists fail to be consistent in their analysis. Two methods have been adopted for physico-chemical analysis. These methods include chemical and structural analysis (Benezech et al., 1994; Tunik, 2000; Mortazavian et al., 2009). For the purpose of this study, only these methods will be briefly discussed with focus on their uses in yoghurt.

1.7.1 Chemical Analysis

Chemical analysis focuses on flavour analysis of yoghurt (taste and aroma), milk constituents (carbohydrates, fats and proteins) and chemical assays such as enzyme activities. Various methods have been used to analyse the chemical components of yoghurt. These include among others gas chromatography, high performance liquid chromatography and electronic nose methodology (Tamime et al., 1996; Tamime and Robinson, 1999). These methods will be briefly discussed.

Gas Chromatography (GC) – This method involves a sampling and instrumental analytical step and has been used to identify and quantify volatile compounds found in yoghurt. Ott et

© University of Pretoria

al. (2000) utilised this method to identify 60 flavour compounds in yoghurt which include 1-nonen-3-one and methional. GC method was also used to study the effect of culture composition containing *L. delbrueckii ssp. bulgaricus*, *Streptococcus salivarius ssp. thermophilus* and *L. acidophilus* on the aroma profiles of fermented milks (Gardini et al., 1999).

High Performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) – This method has been used to determine the presence of organic acids (lactic, acetic, formic, pyruvic and butyric acid) in yoghurt (Adhikari et al., 2000). Using this method, total acids are separated on an ion-exchanger, followed by protein precipitation with trichloro-acetic acid, centrifugation and acid quantification (Lee et al., 2000). Bouzas et al. (1991) evaluated the effects of microencapsulated bifidobacteria on the concentration of lactic and acetic acids found in yoghurt using HPLC.

Electronic nose methodology (ENM) – This method is utilised in food industries for the analysis of flavour release profiles during fermentation in yoghurt. ENM is also used for insitu determinations and non-destructive sensing (Mortazavian et al., 2009).

1.7.2 Structural Analysis

Structural analysis focuses on textural and rheological analysis, and microstructural analysis. Textural and rheological analysis focuses on methods of evaluating gel and liquid properties of yoghurt. On the other hand, microstructural analysis focuses on microstructural images and assays (Mortazavian et al., 2009). For the purposes of this study, textural and rheological analysis will be further discussed.

When determining rheological properties (deformation and flow characteristics) of food products, factors to consider include firmness, elasticity and viscosity (Mortazavian et al., 2009). Viscosity measures the rate of flow of a liquid, to which they can be classified as being pseudoplastic (fluids that return to equilibrium immediately after stress), thixotropy (fluids which take time to equilibrate after stress), rheopectic (fluids whose viscosity increases with constant stress) and newtonian (fluids with the tendency to not flow easily) (Lee and Lucey, 2010). Yoghurt has been classified as a Newtonian fluid (highly viscous)

© University of Pretoria

whose viscosity lowers with constant stirring or agitation, hence is not a true thixotropy (Walstra et al., 1999). Methods used to analyse texture and rheological properties include:

Penetration and Texture Profile Analysis – The penetration test involves puncturing sample surface with a probe to measure consistency, hardness and strength of the gel structure. The texture test utilises double compression forces on samples to measure hardness, cohesiveness and mouthfeel (chewiness) of sample (Mortazavian and Sohrabvandi, 2004).

Viscometric tests – This method involves stirring the yoghurt with a glass rod to evaluate and assess the viscosity of the fractured gel. Two types of viscosities, namely elongation viscosity and shear viscosity, can be analysed (Mortazavian et al., 2009). Shear viscosity is mostly studied and commonly analysed with the rotational viscometers. Rotational viscometers are sensitive instruments with the ability to take accurate measurements of viscosity (Rohm, 1992). Viscometric tests measure from zero shear rates to high shear rates, hence if yoghurt is poured down an orifice with a known diameter and a fixed temperature, the distance and viscosity during a specific time can be measured (Cullen et al., 2000).

Oscillatory tests – This method involves measuring the viscoelastic properties of gel and other gel like materials. Sample materials are put through compression and shear stress before measurements are done (Mortazavian et al., 2009).

1.8 Conclusion

Probiotics provide several health benefits when ingested in sufficient amounts. However, probiotics are faced with the challenge of remaining viable throughout manufacturing processes, storage and during consumption. Microencapsulation is a method used to ensure that probiotics remain viable till they reach the target area. Though various methods of microencapsulation have been used, freeze drying is a method used for the long term preservation of probiotics. The encapsulating material plays a significant role on how best probiotics are protected. Thus, Vegetal BM 297 ATO in addition to inulin is to be explored as a suitable material for the encapsulation and protection of probiotics using freeze drying. The amount of viable cells encapsulated must be investigated, to ensure that they are in sufficient amounts before consumption. Thus, in this study plate counting will be used since it is still

© University of Pretoria

widely used for bacterial enumeration. However, plate count has been associated with bacterial underestimation which could provide unreliable results. Thus, rapid methods such as LIVE/DEAD *Bac*Light kit will also be used in conjunction with microplate fluorochrome assay and flow cytometry for viability analysis.

1.9 References

Adhikari, K., Mustapha, A., Grün, I.U., Fernando, L., 2000. Viability of Microencapsulated bifidobacteria in set yoghurt during refrigerated storage. Journal of Dairy Science 83 (9), 1946-1951.

Ahn, J.B., Hwang, H.J., Park, J.H., 2001. Physiological responses of oxygen- tolerant anaerobic *Bifidobacterium longum* under oxygen. Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology 11, 443-451.

Ainsley, R.A., Champagne, C.P., Gardner, N., Fustier, P., Vuillemard, J.C., 2007. Survival in food systems of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* R011 microentrapped in whey protein gel particles. Journal of Food Science 72 (1), M31-M37.

Alakomi, H. L., Mättö, J., Virkajärvi, I., Saarela, M., 2005. Application of microplate scale Fluorochrome staining assay for the assessment of viability of probiotic preparations. Journal of Microbiological Methods 62, 25-35.

Allan-Wotjas, P., Truelsrup-Hansen, L., Paulson, A.T., 2008. Microstructural studies of probiotic bacteria loaded alginate microcapsules using standard electron microscopy techniques and anhydrous fixation. Lebensmittel-Wissenschaff and Technology Food Science and Technology 41, 101-108.

Allgeyer, L.C., Miller, M.J., Lee, S.Y., 2010. Sensory and microbiological; quality of yoghurt drinks with prebiotics and probiotics. Journal of Dairy Science 93, 4471-4479.

© University of Pretoria

Alm, L., 1982. Effect of fermentation on lactose, glucose and galactose content in milk and suitability of fermented milk products for lactose-deficient individuals. Journal of Dairy Science 65, 346-352.

Anal, A.K., Bhopatkar D., Tokura S., Tamura H., Stevens W.F., 2003. Chitosan-alginate multilayer beads for gastric passage and controlled intestinal release of protein. Drug Development and Industrial Pharmacy 29, 713-724.

Anal, A.K., Singh, H., 2007. Recent advances in microencapsulation of probiotics for industrial applications and targeted delivery. Trends in Food Science and Technology 18, 240-251.

Arroyo, L., Cotton, L.N., Martin, J.H., 1994. Evaluation of media for enumeration of *Bifidobacterium adolescentis, B. Infantis and B.longum* from pure cultures. Cultured Dairy Product Journal 29, 20-21, 23-24.

Audet, P., Paquin, C., Lacroix C., 1991. Effect of medium and temperature of storage on viability of LAB immobilised in κ-carrageenan locust bean gum gel beads. Biotechnology Techniques 5, 307-312.

Auty, M.A.E., Gardiner, G.E., Mcbrearty, S.J., Osullivan, E.O., Mulvihill, D.M., Collins, J.K., Fitzgerald, G.F., Stanton C., Ross, R.P., 2001. Direct in situ viability assessment of bacteria in probiotic dairy products using viability staining in conjunction with Confocal scanning laser microscopy. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 67, 420-425.

Backhed, F., Ley R.E., Sonnenburg, J.L., Peterson, D.A., Gordon, J.I ., 2005. Host-microbial mutualism in the human intestine (Review). Science 307, 1915-1920.

Barthelemy, P., Laforet, J.P., Farah, N., Joachim, J., 1999. Compritol 888 ATO; an innovative hot-melt coating agent for prolonged release drug formulations. European Journal of Pharmaceutics and Biopharmaceutics 47, 87-90.

Begley, M., Hill, C., Gahan, C.G.M., 2006. Bile salt hydrolase activity in probiotics. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 72, 1729-1738.

© University of Pretoria

Benezech, T., Maingonnat, J.F., 1994. Characterization of the rheology properties of yoghurt. A review Journal of Food Engineering 21, 447-472.

Bengmark, S., Garcia de Lorenzo, A., Culebras, J.M., 2001. Use of pro-, pre- and synbiotics in the ICU: Future options. Nutrición Hospitalaria 6, 239-256.

Benno, Y., Mitsuoka, T., 1992. Impact of *Bifidobacterium longum* on human fecal microflora. Microbiology and Immunology 36, 683- 694.

Berg, D.R., 1996. Indigenous gastrointestinal microflora. Trends in Microbiology 4(11), 430-435.

Biggerstaff, J. P., Puil, M.L., Weidow, B.L., Prataer, J., Glass, K., Radosevich, M., White, De., 2006. New methodology for viability testing in environmental samples. Molecular and Cellular Probes 20, 141-146.

Bouhnik, Y., Vahedi, K., Achour, L., Attar, A., Salfati, J., Pochart, P., Marteau, P., Flourié, B., Bornet, F., Rambaud, J.C., 1999. Short chain oligosaccharides administration dose dependently increases bifidobacteria in healthy humans. Journal of Nutrition 129 (1), 113-116.

Bouzas, J., Kantt, C.A., Bodyfelt, F., Torres, J.A., 1991. Simultaneous determination of sugars and organic acids in cheddar cheese by high performance liquid chromatography. Journal of Food Science 56, 276-278.

Boylston, T.D., Vinderola, C.G., Ghoddusi, H.B., Reinheimer, J, A., 2004. Incorporation of bifidobacteria into cheeses: challenges and rewards. International Dairy Journal 14, 375-387.

Brinques, G.B., Ayub, M.A.Z., 2011. Effects of microencapsulation on survival of *Lactobacillus plantarum* in simulated gastrointestinal conditions, refrigeration and yoghurt. Journal of Food Engineering 103, 123-128.

© University of Pretoria

Bryers, J.J., 1990. Biofilms in Biotechnology. In: Characklis, W. G., Marshall, K.C. (Ed.), Biofilms. Wiley and Sons, New York, pp. 733-734.

Buller, H.A., Grand R.J., 1990. Lactose intolerance. Annual Reviews in Medicine 41, 141-148.

Bunthoff, C.J., Bloemen, K., Breeuwer, P., Rombouts, F.M., Abee, T., 2001. Flow cytometric assessment of viability of lactic acid bacteria. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 67 (5), 2326- 2335.

Bunthoff, C.J., Abee, T., 2002. Development of flow cytometric method to analyse subpopulations of bacteria in probiotic products and dairy starters. Applied Environmental Microbiology 68, 2934- 2942.

Burgain, J., Gaiani, C., Linder, M., Scher, J., 2011. Encapsulation of probiotic living cells: from the laboratory scale to industrial applications. Journal of Food Engineering 104, 467-483.

Capela, P., Hay, T.K.C., Shah, N.P., 2006. Effect of cryoprotectants, prebiotics and microencapsulation on the survival of probiotic organisms in yoghurt and freeze dried yoghurt. Food Research International 39, 203-211.

Carvalho, A.S., Silva, J., Ho, P., Teixeira, P., Malcata, X.F., Gibbs, P., 2004. Relevant factors for the preparation of freeze dried lactic acid bacteria. International Dairy Journal 14, 835-847.

Champagne, C.P., Gardner, N., Brochu, E., Beaulieu, Y., 1991. The freeze drying of lactic acid bacteria. A Review, Canada Institution of Science and Technology Journal 4 (314), 118-128.

Champagne, C.P., Fustier, P., 2007. Microencapsulation for the improved delivery of bioactive compounds into foods. Current Opinion in Biotechnology 18,184-190.

© University of Pretoria

Chandramouli, V., Kailasapathy, K., Peiris, P., Jones, M., 2004. An improved method of microencapsulation and its evaluation to protect *Lactobacillus* spp in simulated gastric conditions. Journal of Microbiological Methods 56, 27-35.

Chang, E.S., Zhang, Z., 2002. Encapsulation of probiotic *Lactobacillus acidophilus* by direct compression. Food and Bioproducts Processing 80, 78-82.

C Chávarri, M., Marañón, I., Ares, R., Ibánez, F.C., Marzo, F., Villarán, M.D.C., 2010. Microencapsulation of a probiotic and prebiotic in alginate-chitosan capsules improves survival in simulated gastro-intestinal conditions. International Journal of Food Microbiology 142 (1-2), 185-189.

Chávarri, M., Marañón, I., Villarán, M.D.C., 2012. Encapsulation technology to protect probiotic bacteria. Intech Open Science 23, 502-540.

Chávez, B.E., Ledeboer, A.M., 2007. Drying of prebiotics: optimization of formulation and process to enhance storage survival. Drying Technology 25, 1193-1201.

Chen, H.C., Wen Lin, C., Chen, M.J., 2006. The effects of freeze drying and rehydration on survival of microorganisms in kefir. Asian-Australian Journal 1(19), 126-130.

Chen, M.J., Chen, K.N., 2007. Applications of probiotic encapsulation in dairy products. In: Lakkis, J. M. (Ed.), Encapsulation and controlled release technologies in food systems. Wiley-Blackwell, USA, pp. 83-107.

Cherie, J.Z., Glenn, R.G., 1998. An overview of probiotics, prebiotics and synbiotics in the functional food concept: Perspectives and Future strategies. International Dairy Journal 8, 473-479.

Collee, J.G., Rutter, J.M., Watt, B., 1971. The significantly viable particle: A study of the subculture of an exacting sporing anaerobe. Journal of Medical Microbiology 4, 271-288.

© University of Pretoria

Corcionivoschi, N., Drinceanu, D., Stef, L., Luca, I., Julean, C., Mingyart, O., 2010. Probiotics-Identification and ways of action. Innovative Romanian Food Biotechnology 6, 1-11.

Corcoran, B.M., Ross, R.P., Fitzgerald, G.F., Stanton, C., 2004. Comparative survival of probiotic lactobacilli spray dried in the presence of prebiotic substances. Journal of Applied Microbiology 96, 1024-1039.

Crittenden, R., Playne, M.J., 1996. Production, properties and applications of food grade oligosaccharides. Trends in Food Science and Technology 7, 353-361.

Cullen, P.J., Duffy, A.P., O' Donnel, C.P., O' Callaghen, D.J., 2000. Process viscosity for the food industry. Trends in Food Science and Technology 11, 451-457.

Cummings, J.H., Roberfroid, M.B., 1997. A new look at dietary carbohydrate: chemistry, physiology and health. European Journal of Clinical Nutrition 51, 417-442.

Cummings, J.H., Macfarlane, G.T., Macfarlane, S., 2003. Intestinal bacteria and ulcerative colitis. Current Issues in Intestinal Microbiology 4, 9-20.

Dave, R.I., Shah, N.P., 1997. Viability of yoghurt and probiotic bacteria in yoghurts made from commercial starter cultures. International Dairy Journal 7 (1), 31-41.

Dembczynski, R., Jankowski, T., 2002. Growth characteristics and acidifying activity of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* in alginate/starch liquid-core capsules. Enzyme and Microbial Technology 31, 111-115.

Demirbas, A., 2001. Supercritical fluid extraction and chemicals from biomass with supercritical fluid. Energy Conversion and Management 42, 279-294.

Desmond, C., Ross, R.P., Callaghan, O., Fitzgerald, G., Stanton, C., 2002. Improved survival of *Lactobacillus paracasei* NFBX 338 in spray dried powders containing gum acacia. Journal of Applied Microbiology 93 (6), 1003-11.

© University of Pretoria

De Vos, P., Faas, M.M., Spasojevic, M., Sikkema, J., 2010. Encapsulation for preservation of functionality and targeted delivery of bioactive food components. International Dairy Journal 20 (4), 292-302.

Doleyres, Y., Lacroix, C., 2005.Technologies with free and immobilised cells for probiotic bifidobacteria production and protection. International Dairy Journal 15,973-988.

Dinakar, P., Mistry, V.V., 1994. Growth and viability of *Bifidobacterium bifidum* in cheddar cheese. Journal of Dairy Science 77 (10), 2854-2864.

Ding, W.K., Shah, N.P., 2008. Survival of free and microencapsulated probiotic bacteria in orange and apple juices. International Food Research Journal 15 (2), 219-232.

Dykstra, M.J., 1992. Biological electron microscopy: theory, techniques and troubleshooting, 209-272, New York: Plenum press.

FAO/WHO, Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations/World Health Organisation, 2002. Guidelines for the evaluation of probiotics in food. London, Ontario, Canada. April 30 and may 1, 2002.

Fávaro-Trinidade, C.S., Grosso, C.R.F., 2002. Microencapsulation of *L. acidophilus* (La-05) and *B. lactis* (Bb-12) and evaluation of their survival at the pH values of the stomach and in bile. Journal of Microencapsulation 19 (4), 485- 494.

Fini, A., Cavallari, C., Alvarez, A.M.R., Rodriguez, M.G., 2011. Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences 100 (8), 3482-3494.

Fiordaliso M., Kok N., Desager D.P.,Goethals F., Deboyser D., Roberfroid M., Delzenne N., 1995. Dietary oligofructose lowers triglycerides, phospholipids, and cholesterol in serum and very low-density lipoproteins of rats. Lipids 30, 163-167.

Fooks, L.J., Fuller, R., Gibson, G.R., 1999. Prebiotics, probiotics and human gut microbiology. International Dairy Journal 9, 53-61.

© University of Pretoria

Fooks, L.J., Gibson, G.R., 2002. Probiotics as modulators of the gut flora. British Journal of Nutrition 88 (1), S39-S49.

Fouad, E.A., Mahmoud, E-B., Mahrous, M.G., Alsarra, I.A., Alashbban, Z., Alanazi, F.K., 2011. In vitro investigation for embedding dextromethorphan in lipids using spray drying. Digest Journal of Nanomaterials and Biostructures 6(3), 1129-1139.

Franjione, J., Vasishtha, N., 1995. The art and science of microencapsulation, Technology Today. Summer 1995.

Frederiksen, L., Anton K., van Hoogevest P., Keller H.R., Leueberger H., 1997. Preparation of liposomes encapsulating water-soluble compounds using supercritical carbon dioxide. Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences 86, 921-928.

Fritzen-Freire, C.B., Prudencio, E.S., Amboni, R.D.M.C., Pinto, S.S., Negrão-Murakami, A.N., Murakami, F.S., 2012. Microencapsulation of bifidobacteria by spray drying in the presence of prebiotics. Food Research International 45, 306-312.

Fuller, R., 1989. Probiotics in man and animals. Journal of Applied Microbiology 66 (5), 365-378.

Furrie, E., Macfarlane S., Kennedy A., Cummings J.H., Walsh S.V., O'Niell D.A., Macfarlane G.T., 2005. Synbiotic therapy (*Bifidobacterium longum*/Synergy 1) initiates resolution of inflammation in patients with active ulcerative colitis: a randomised controlled pilot trial. Gut 54, 242-249.

Gallaher, D.D., Khil, J., 1999. The effect of synbiotics on colon carcinogenesis in rats. Journal of Nutrition 129,1483S-14867S.

Gattefossé SAS, technical and material safety data sheet. Regulatory Department, regulatory@gattefosse.com.

© University of Pretoria

Gardini, F., Lanciotti, R., Guerzoni, M.E., Torriani, S., 1999. Evaluation of aroma production and survival of *Streptococcus thermophilus*, *Lactobacillus delbrueckii subsp bulgaricus* and *Lactobacillus acidophilus* in fermented milks. International Dairy Journal 9, 125-134.

Garner, B.E., Garner, M.R., Flint, J.F., Methods for detecting and quantifying specific probiotic microorganisms in animal feed. United States Patent Application 20090203030.08/13/2009.

Gent, F.J., Belanger, K., Triche, E.W., Bracken, M.B., Beckett, W.S., Leaderer, B.P., 2009. Association of paediatric asthma severity with exposure to common household dust allergens. Environmental Research 109, 769-774.

Gibbs, B.F., Kermasha S., Ali I., Mulligan C.H., 1999. Encapsulation in the food industry: A review. International Journal of Food Science and Nutrition 50, 213-224.

Gibson, G.R., Roberfroid M.B., 1995. Dietary modulation of the human colonic microbiota: introducing the concept of prebiotics. Journal of Nutrition 125, 1401-12.

Gibson, G.R., Beatty, E.B., Wang, X., Cummings, J.H., 1995. Selective stimulation of bifidobacteria in the human colon by oligo-fructose and inulin. Gastroenterology 108, 975-982.

Gibson, G, R., Rastall, R.A., 2004. When we eat, which bacteria should we be feeding? American Society of Microbiology 70 (5), 224-230.

Godward, G.N., 2000. Studies on enhancing the viability and survival of probiotic bacteria in dairy foods through strain selection and microencapsulation. University of Western Sydney, Master of Hons, Thesis.

Godward, G., Kailasapathy, K., 2003a. Viability and survival of free and encapsulated probiotic bacteria in cheddar cheese. Milchwissenschaft 58 (11-12), 624-627.

Godward, G., Kailasapathy, K., 2003b. Viability and survival of free, encapsulated and co-encapsulated probiotic bacteria in ice cream. Milchwissenschaft 58 (3-4), 161-164.

© University of Pretoria

Gonzalez, N.J., Adhikari, K., Sancho-Madriz, M., 2011. Sensory characteristics of peach flavoured yoghurt drinks containing prebiotics and synbiotics. LWT- Food Science and Technology 44, 158-163.

Gouin, S., 2004. Microencapsulation: Industrial appraisal of existing technologies and trends. Trends Food Science Technology 15(7-8), 330-347.

Gowda, D.V., Rajesh, N., Moin, A., Shivakumar, H.G., 2010. Controlled Release Behaviour of Nifedipine from the pellets of Gelucire/Microcrystalline cellulose blends. International Journal of Pharmacy and Technology Research 2(2), 1215-1226.

Grill, J.P., Perrin, S., Schneider, F., 2000. Bile salt toxicity to some bifidobacteria strains: role of conjugated bile salt hydrolase and pH. Canadian Journal of Microbiology 46, 878-884.

Groboillot, A.F., Champagne, C.P., Darling, G.F., Poncelet, D., 1993. Membrane formation by interfacial cross-linking of chitosan for microencapsulation of *Lactococcus lactis*. Biotechnology and Bioengineering 42 (10), 1157-1163.

Groboillot, A., Boadi, D.K., Poncelet, D., Wenfeld, R.J., 1994. Immobilisation of cells for application in the food industry. Critical Reviews in Biotechnology 14, 75-107.

Guandalini S., Pensabene L., Zikri M.A., Dias J.A., Casali L.G., Hoekstra H., Kolacek, S., Massar, K., Micetic-Turk, D., Papadopoulou, A., de Sousa, J.S., Sandhu, B., Szajewska, H., Weizman, Z., 2000. *Lactobacillus* GG administered in oral rehydration solution to children with acute diarrhoea: A multicenter European trial. Journal of Paediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition 30 (1), 54-60.

Guarner, F., Malagelada, J.R., 2003. Gut flora in health and disease. Review, the Lancet 361, 512-519.

Gueimonde, M., Garrigues, C., Vansinderen, D., De los Reyes, C.G., Maragolles, A., 2009. Bile inducible efflux transporter from *Bifidobacterium longum* NCC 2705, conferring bile resistance. Applied Environmental Microbiology 75, 3153-3160.

© University of Pretoria

Gupta, P., Andrew, H., Kirschner, B.S., Guandalini, S., 2000. Is *Lactobacillus* GG helpful in children with Crohn's disease? Results of a preliminary, open-label study. Journal of Paediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition 31, 453-457.

Hansen, L.T., Allan-Wojtas, P.M., Jin, Y.L., Paulson, A.T., 2002. Survival of calcium-alginate microencapsulated *Bifidobacterium* spp in milk and in simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Food Microbiology 19, 35-45.

Harper, S.J., Barnes, D.L., Bodyfelt, F.W., McDaniel, M.R., 1991. Sensory ratings of commercial plain yoghurts by consumers and descriptive panels. Journal of Dairy Science 74, 2927-2935.

Heavy, P.M., Savage, S.A., Parrett, A., Cecchini, C., Edwards, C.A., Rowland, I. R., 2003. Protein degradation products and bacterial enzyme activities in faeces of breast fed and formula-fed infants. Br Journal of Nutrition 89, 509-515.

Heidebach, T., Först Petra., Kulozik, U., 2010. Influence of casein-based microencapsulation on freeze-drying and storage of probiotic cells. Journal of Food Engineering 98, 309-316.

Heidebach, T., Först, P., Kulozik, U., 2012. Microencapsulation of probiotic cells for food applications. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition 52, 291-311.

Heller, J.K., 2001. Probiotic bacteria in fermented foods: product characteristics and starter organisms. American Journal of Clinical Nutrition 73, 374S-379S.

Hénon, F. E., Camaiti, M., Burke, A.L.C., Carbonell, R.G., DeSimone, J.M., Piacenti, F., 1999. Supercritical CO2 as a solvent for polymeric stone protective materials. Journal of Supercritical Fluids 15, 173-179.

Heydari, S., Mortazavian, A.M., Ehsani, M.R., Mohammadifar, M.A., Ezzatpanah, H., 2011. Biochemical, Microbiological and Sensory characteristics of probiotic yoghurt containing various prebiotic compounds. Italian Journal Food of Science 23, 153-163.

© University of Pretoria

Hibbs, A.R., 2004a. What is confocal microscopy? In: Hibbs, A.R. (Ed.), Confocal microscopy for biologists. New York, Springer, pp. 1-29.

Holzapfel, W.H., Haberer, P., Snel, J., Schillinger, U., Huis in't veld, J.H., 1998. Overview of gut flora and probiotics. International Journal of Food Microbiology 41, 85-101.

Holzapfel, W.H., Schillinger, U., 2002.Introduction to pre- and probiotics. Food Research International 35, 109-116.

Homayouni, A., Azizi, A., Ehsani, M.R., Yarmand, M.S., Razavi, S.H., 2008. Effect of microencapsulation and resistant starch on the probiotic survival and sensory properties of synbiotic ice cream. Food Chemistry 111 (1), 50-55.

Hoolihan, L.K., 2001. Prophylactic and therapeutic uses of probiotics: A review. Journal of the American Dietetic Association 101 (2), 229-241.

Hooper, L.V., Midtvedt, T., Gordon J.I., 2002. How host-microbial interactions shape the nutrient environment of the mammalian intestine. Annual Review 22, 283-307.

Hootman, R.C., 1992. Manual on descriptive analysis testing for sensory evaluation. Baltimore: American Society for Testing and Materials 52p.

Hsieh, Y.H., Ofori, J.A., 2007. Innovations in food technology for health. Asia Pacific Journal of Clinical Nutrition 16, 65-73.

Hylemon, P.B., Harder, J., 1998. Biotransformation of mono- terpenes, bile acids and other isoprenoids in anaerobic ecosystems. FEMS Microbiology Reviews 22 (5), 475-488.

Itzkowitz, S.H., Harpaz, N., 2004. Diagnosis and management of dysplasia in patients with inflammatory bowel diseases. Gastroenterology 126, 1634-1648.

Jankowski, T., Zielinska, M., Wysakowska A., 1997. Encapsulation of lactic acid bacteria with alginate/starch capsules. Biotechnology Technology 11, 31-34.

© University of Pretoria

Jepras, R.I., Carter, J., Pearson, S.C., Paul, F.E., Wilkinson, M.J., 1995. Development of a robust flow cytometric assay for determining numbers of viable bacteria. Applied Environmental Microbiology 61, 2696-2701.

Kailasapathy, K., 2002. Microencapsulation of probiotic bacteria: technology and potential applications. Current Issues of Interest in Microbiology 3, 39-48.

Kailasapathy, K., Harmstorf, I., Phillips, M., 2008. Survival of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium animalis ssp. Lactis* in stirred fruit yoghurts. LWT-Food Science and Technology 41 (7), 1317-1322.

Kalliomäki, M., Salminen, S., Poussa, T., Arvilommi, H., Isolauri, E., 2003. Probiotics and prevention of atopic disease: 4-year follow-up of a randomised placebo-controlled trial. The Lancet 361, 1869-1871.

Kalliomäki, M., 2009. Probiotics, prebiotics and synbiotics; a hope or hype in allergy? Clinical and Experimental Allergy 40, 694-696.

Kelly, D., Conway, S., Aminov, R., 2005. Commensal gut bacteria: mechanisms of immune modulation. Trends in Immunology 26, 326-333.

Kelly, G., 2008. Inulin-type prebiotics: a review (Part1). Alternative Medicine Review: a Journal of Clinical Therapeutic 13(4), 315-329.

Kelly, G., 2009. Inulin-type prebiotics: a review (Part 2). Alternative Medicine Review: a Journal of Clinical Therapeutic 14(1), 36-55.

Khalil, A.H., Mansour, E.H., 1998. Alginate encapsulated bifidobacteria survival in mayonnaise. Journal of Food Science 63 (4), 702-705.

Kleesen, B., Sykura, B., Zunft, H-J., Blaut, M., 1997. Effects of inulin and lactose on faecal microflora, microbial activity, and bowel habit in elderly constipated persons. American Journal of Clinical Nutrition 65, 1397-1402.

© University of Pretoria

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

Kolida, S., Gibson, G.R., 2011. Synbiotics in health and disease. Annual Review in Food Science and Technology 2, 373-393.

Kpodo, F.M.K., Afoakwa, E.O., Amoa, B.B., Budu, A.S., Saalia, F.K., 2104. Effect of ingredient variation on the microbial acidification, susceptibility to syneresis, water holding capacity and viscosity of soy-peanut cow milk yoghurt. Journal of Nutritional Health and Food Engineering 1 (2), 1-6.

Kramer, M., Obermajer, N., Matijasic, B.B., Rogelj, I., Kmetec, V., 2009. Quantification of live and dead probiotic bacteria in lyophilised product by real-time PCR and by flow cytometry. Applied Genetics and Molecular Biotechnology 84, 1137-1147.

Krasaekoopt, W., Bhandari, B., Deeth, H., 2003. Evaluation of encapsulation techniques for probiotics for yoghurt. International Dairy Journal 13, 3-13.

Kulkarni, N., Reddy, B.S., 1994. Inhibitory effect of *Bifidobacterium longum* cultures on the azoxymethane- induced aberrant crypt foci formation and faecal bacteria β- glucoronidase. Proceedings of the Society of Experimental Biology and Medicine 207, 278-283.

Lahtinen, S.J., Gueimande, M., Ouwehand, A.C., Reinikainen, J.P., Salimen, S.J., 2006. Comparison of four methods to enumerate probiotic bifidobacteria in a fermented food product. Food Microbiology 23, 571-577.

Lahtinen, S.J., Ouwehand, A, C., Salminen, S.J., Forssell, P., Myllarinen, P., 2007. Effects of starch and lipid based encapsulation on the culturability of two *Bifidobacterium longum* strains. Letters in Applied Microbiology 44, 500-505.

Lankaputhra, W.E., Shah, N.P., 1997. Improving viability of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and bifidobacteria in yoghurt using two step fermentation and neutralized mix. Food Australia 49 (8), 363-366.

Lawless, H. T., Heymann, H., 1998. Sensory evaluation of food. Principles and practices (Food Science Text Series), second ed. Springer, New York.

© University of Pretoria

Lee, K., Heo, T., 2000. Survival of *Bifidobacterium longum* immobilized in calcium alginate beads in simulated gastric juices and bile salt solution. Applied Environmental Microbiological 66, 869-873.

Lee, Y.K., Salminen, S., 2009. Handbook of probiotics and prebiotics, second ed. Wiley, Hoboken, New Jersey.

Lee, R.M., Pawlowski, K.S., Luong, A., Furze A.D., Roland P.S., 2009. Biofilm presence in humans with chronic suppurative otitis media. Otolaryngology- Head and Neck Surgery 141, 567-571.

Lee, W.J., Lucey, J.A., 2010. Formation and physical properties of yoghurt. Asian-Australian Journal of Animal Science 23 (9), 1127-1136.

Lian, W.C., Hsiao, H, C., Chou, C.C., 2002. Survival of bifidobacteria after spray drying. International Journal of Food Microbiology 74, 79-86.

Lian, W.C., Hsiao, H, C., Chou, C.C., 2002. Viability of encapsulated bifidobacteria in simulated gastric juice and bile solution. International Journal of Food Microbiology 2679, 1-9.

Li, F.Q., Hu, J.H., Deng, J.X., Su, H., Xu, S., Liu, J.Y., 2006. In vitro controlled release of sodium formulates from compritol 888 ATO- based matrix tablets. International Journal of Pharmaceutics 324, 152-157.

Liong, M.T., Shah, N.P., 2005b. Acid and bile tolerance and cholesterol removal ability of *Lactobacillus* strains. Journal of Dairy Science 88, 55-66.

Liong, M.T., Dunshea., Shah, N.P., 2007. Effects of a synbiotic containing *Lactobacillus acidophilus* ATCC 4962 on plasma lipid profiles and morphology of erythrocytes in hyperchloesterolaemic pigs on high and low fat diets. British Journal of Nutrition 98(4), 736-744.

© University of Pretoria

Loftus Jr, E.V., Sandborn, W.J., 2002. Epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease. Gastroenterology Clinics of North America 31, 1-20.

Loo van Jan., Cummings, J., Delzenne, N., Englyst, H., Franck, A., Hopkins, M., Kok, N., Macfarlane, G., Newton, D., Quigley, M., Roberfroid, M., van Vliet, T., van den Heuvel, E., 1999. Functional Food properties of non-digestible oligosaccharides: a consensus report from the ENDO project (DGXII AIRII-CT94-1095). British Journal of Nutrition 81, 121-132.

Lourens-Hattingh, A., Viljoen, B.C., 2001. Review: Yoghurt as probiotic carrier food. International Dairy Journal 11, 1-17.

Louvard, D., Kedinger, M., Hauri, H.P., 1992. The differentiating intestinal epithelial cell: establishment and maintenance of functions through interactions between cellular structures. Annual Review Cell Biology 8, 157-195.

Macfarlane, S., Macfarlane, G., 2004. Bacterial diversity in the human gut. Advances in Applied Microbiology 54, 261-289.

Macfarlane, G.T., Steed, H., Macfarlane, S., 2007. Bacterial metabolism and health related effects of galacto-oligosaccharides and other probiotics. Review Article, Journal of Applied Microbiology 104, 305-344.

Mack, D.R., Michail, S., Wet, S., 1999. Probiotics inhibit enteropathogenic *E.coli* adherence in vitro by inducing intestinal mucin gene expression. American Journal of Physiology 276, G941-G950.

Mackie, R.I., Sghir, I., Gaskin, H.R., 1999. Developmental microbial ecology of the neonatal gastrointestinal tract. American Journal of Clinical Nutrition 69(5), 1035S-1045S.

Madigan, M.T., Martinko, JM., 2006. Brock biology of microorganisms, Twelfth ed. Pearson Prentice Hall, USA.

© University of Pretoria

Mägli, A., Wendt, M., Leisinger, T., 1996. Isolation and characterization of *Dehalobacterium formicoaceticum* gen.nov.sp.nov; a strictly anaerobic bacterium utilizing dichloromethane as a source of carbon and energy. Archives of Microbiology 166, 101-108.

Maidak, B.L., Cole J.R., Lilburn ,T.G., Parker, C.T.J., Saxman, P.R., Farris, R.J., Garrity, G.M., Olsen, G.J., Schmidt, T.M., Tiedje J.M., 2001. The RDP-II (Ribosomal Database Project). Nucleic Acids Research 29, 173-174.

Marteau, P.R., de Vres, M., Cellier, C.J., Schrezenmeir, J., 2001. Protection from gastrointestinal disorders with the use of probiotics. The American Journal of Clinical Nutrition 73, 430S-436S.

Masco, L., Crockaer, C., van Hoorde, K., Swings, J., Huys, G., 2007. In vitro assessment of the gastrointestinal transit tolerance of taxonomic reference strains from human origin and probiotic product isolates of *Bifidobacterium*. Journal of Dairy Science 90, 3572-3578.

Matilla-Sandholm, T., Myllärinen, P., Crittenden, R., Mongensen, G., Fondén, R., Saarela, M., 2002. Technological challenges for future probiotic foods. International Dairy Journal 12, 173-182.

Metchnikoff, E., 1907. Lactic acid as inhibiting intestinal putrefaction. In: Chalmers, P.M. (Ed.), the prolongation of life: optimistic studies. London, Heinemann, pp. 161-183.

Methylene Chloride. 1996. International Programme on Chemical Safety, 2nd Edition. Environmental Health Criteria 164, 1-97.

Miller, D.A., Gill, M., 2012. Spray drying technology. American Association of Pharmaceutical Scientists 3, 363-442.

Modler, H.W., Villa-Garcia, L., 1993. The growth of *Bifidobacterium longum* in a whey-based medium and viability of this organism in frozen yoghurt with low and high levels of developed acidity. Cultured Dairy Products Journal 28, 4-8.

© University of Pretoria

Moes, A.J., 1993. Gastroretentive dosage form. Critical Review in Therapeutic Drug Release Systems 10, 143-195.

Moolman, F.S., Labuschagne, P.W., Thantsha, M.S., Vander Merwe, T.L., Rolfes, H., Cloete, T.E., 2006. Encapsulating probiotics with an interpolymer complex in supercritical carbondioxide. South African Journal of Science 102,349-354.

Moro, G.E., Arslanoglu, S., Stahl, B., Jelinek, U., Wahn, U., Boehm, G.M., 2006. A mixture of prebiotic oligosaccharides reduces the incidence of atopic dermatitis during the first six months of age. Archives of Disease in Childhood 91, 814-819.

Mortazavian, A.M., Sohrabvandi, S., 2004. Sensory characteristics of yoghurt. Eta Publication Tehran, Iran, pp. 18-36.

Mortazavian, A. M., Razavi, S.H., Ehsani, M., Sohrabvandi, S., 2007. Principles and methods of microencapsulation of probiotic microorganisms. Review article, Iranian Journal of Biotechnology 5 (1), 1-18.

Mortazavian, A. M., Azizi, A., Ehsani, M.R., Razavi, S.H., Mousavi, S.M., Sohrabvandi, S., Reinheimer, J.A., 2008. Survival of encapsulated probiotic bacteria in Iranian yoghurt drink (Doogh) after the product exposure to simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Milchwissenschaft 63 (4), 427-429.

Mortazavian, A. M., Rezaei, K., Sohrabvandi, S., 2009. Application of advanced instrumental methods for yoghurt analysis. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition 49, 153-163.

Moshashaee, S., Bisrat, M., Forbes, R.T., Nyqvist, H., York, P., 2000. Supercritical fluid processing of proteins 1: Lysozyme precipitation from organic solution. European Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences 11, 239-245.

Muñoz, M., Guevara, L., Palop, A., Tabera, J., Fernández, P.S., 2009. Determination of the effect of plant essential oils obtained by supercritical fluid extraction on the growth and viability of *Listeria monocytogenes* in broth and food systems using flow cytometry. LWT-Food Science and Technology 42, 220-227.

© University of Pretoria

Nilsson, K., Birnbaum, S., Flygare, S., Linse, L., Schroder, U., Jeppsson, U., Larsson, P.O., Mosbach, K., Brodelius, P., 1983. A general method for the immobilisation of cells with preserved viability. European Journal of Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology 17, 319-326.

Noh, H.J., Seo, H.M., Lee, J.H., Chang, Y.H., 2013. Physicochemical and sensory properties of yoghurt supplemented with Corni fructus during storage. Preventive Nutrition and Food Science 18 (1), 45-49.

Novik, G.I., Astapovich, N.I., Samartsev, A.A., 2001. Investigation of the physiological and biochemical characteristics of Bifidobacteria at the late stages of their development. Microbiology 70(1), 429-435.

Nutraceutix., 2001. Nutraceutix probiotics. Internet: http:// www.nutraceutix.com. Access date: 06/02/2003.

Oelschlaeger, T.A., 2010. Mechanisms of probiotic actions: A review. International Journal of Medical Microbiology 300, 57-62.

Okuro, P.K., Thomazini, M., Balieiro, J.C.C., Liberal, R.D.C.O., Fávaro- Trindade, C.S., 2013. Co-encapsulation of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* with inulin or polydextrose in solid lipid microparticles provides protection and improves stability. Food Research International 53, 96-103.

Olvera-Bello, A.E., Estrada-Muñiz, E., Elizondo, G., Vega, L., 2010. Susceptibility to the cytogenetic effects of dichloromethane is related to the glutathione S-transferase theta phenotype. Toxicology Letters 199, 218-224.

Ormerod, M.G., 2000. ‘Flow cytometry: practical approach’ third ed. Oxford University Press, New York.

© University of Pretoria

O'Riodan, K., Andrews, D., Buckle, K., Conway, P., 2001. Evaluation of a *Bifidobacterium* strain with starch as an approach to prolonging viability during storage. Journal of Applied Microbiology 91(6), 1059-1066.

O'Sullivan, D.J., 1999. Methods for analysis of the intestinal flora. In Tannock, G.W. (Ed.), Probiotics: A critical review. Horizon scientific press, Wymond-ham, UK, pp. 23-24

Ott, A., Hugi, A., Baumgartner, M., Chaintreau, A., 2000. Sensory investigation or yoghurt flavour perception: mutual influence of volatiles and acidity. Journal of Science of Food and Agriculture 48, 441-450.

Özer, B., Kirmaci, H.A., Senel, E., Atamer, M., Hayaloglu, A., 2009. Improving viability of *Bifidobacterium bifidum* BB-12 and *Lactobacillus acidophilus* LA-5 in white brined cheese by microencapsulation. International Dairy Journal 19 (1), 22-29.

Özyazia, M., Gökce, E.H., Ertan, G., 2006. Release and diffusional modelling of metronidazole lipid matrices. European Journal of Pharmaceutics and Biopharmaceutics 63, 331-339.

Pantoflickova, D., Corthésy Theulaz, I., Dorta, G., Stolte, M., Isler, P., Rochat, F., Enslen, M., Blum, A.L., 2003. Favourable effect of regular intake of fermented milk containing *Lactobacillus johnsonii* on *Helicobacter pylori* associated gastritis. Alimentary Pharmacology and Therapeutics 18 (8), 805-813.

Papadakis, K.A., Targan, S.R., 2000. Role of cytokines in the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. Annual Review of Medicine 51, 289-298.

Paparella, A., Taccogna, L., Aguzzi, I., López, C.C., Serio A., Marsilio, F., Suzzi, G., 2008. Flow cytometric assessment of the antimicrobial activity of essential oils against *Listeria monocytogenes*. Food Control 19, 1174- 1182.

Paparella, A., Serio, A., López, C.C., 2012. Flow cytometry applications in food safety studies. Flow cytometry- Recent perspectives 4, 70-102.

© University of Pretoria

Parvez, S., Malik, K.A., Kang, S.A., Kim, H.Y., 2006. Probiotics and their fermented food products are beneficial for health. Journal of Applied Microbiology 100, 1171-1185.

Patel, J. K., Patel, N.V., Shah, S.H., 2009. In vitro controlled release of colon targeted mesalamine from compritol ATO 888 based matrix tablets using factorial design. Research in Pharmaceutical Sciences 4 (2), 63-75.

Payne, J.F., Morris, A.E.J., Beers, P., 1999. Evaluation of selective media for the enumeration of *Bifidobacterium* sp in milk. Journal of Applied Microbiology 86,353-358.

Peighambardoust, S.H., Tafti, G.A., Hesari, J., 2011. Application of spray drying for preservation of lactic acid starter cultures: A review. Trends in Food Science and Technology 22, 215-224.

Petrovic, T., Nedovic, V., Dimitrijevic, B.S., Bugarski, B., Lacroix, C., 2007. Protection of probiotic microorganism by microencapsulation. Chemical Industry and Chemical Engineering Quarterly 13 (3), 169-174.

Phillips, C.R., Poon, Y.N., 1988. Immobilisation of cells. Biotechnology monographs. Springer-Verlag, Germany 5 (11), 50-64.

Piano, D.M., Morelli, L., Strozzi, G.P., Allesina, S., Barba, M., Deidda, F., Lorenzini, P., Ballaré, M., Montino, F., Orsello, M., Sartori, M., Garello, E., Carmagnola, S., Pagliarulo, M., Capurso, L., 2006. Probiotics: from research to consumer. Digestive and Liver Disease 38 (2), S248-S255.

Picot, A., Lacroix, C., 2004. Encapsulation of *Bifidobacteria* in whey protein based microcapsules and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Dairy Journal 14, 505-515.

Ping, Su., Henriksson, A., Mitchell, H., 2007. Selected prebiotics support the growth of probiotic mono-cultures in vitro. Food Microbiology Anaerobe 13, 134-139.

© University of Pretoria

Podolsky, D.K., 2002. Inflammatory bowel diseases: review article. New England Journal of Medicine 347 (6), 417-429.

Porter, C.J.H., Charman, W.N., 2001. In vitro assessment of oral lipid based formulations. Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews 20, 127-147.

Porubcan, R.S., Sellars, R.L., 1975. Stabilized dry cultures of lactic acid –producing bacteria. US patent no. 3897307.

Possemiers, S., Marzorati, M., Verstraete, W., Van de Wiele, T., 2010. Bacteria and chocolate: a successful combination for probiotic delivery. International Journal of Food Microbiology 141 (1-2), 97-103.

Prakash, S., Tomaro-Buchesneau, C., Saha, S., Cantor, A., 2011. The gut microbiota and human health with an emphasis on the use of microencapsulated bacterial cells. Journal of Biomedicine and Biotechnology. Article 981214, 1-12.

Ramakrishna, S.V., Prakashan, R.S., 1999. Microbial fermentations with immobilised cells. Current Science 77, 87-100.

Rault, A., Beal, C., Ghorbal, S., Jean-Claude, O., Bouix, M., 2007. Multiparametric flow cytometry allows rapid assessment and comparison of lactic acid bacteria viability after freezing and during frozen storage. Cryobiology 55, 35-43.

Reyed, M.R., 2007. The role of *Bifidobacterium* in health. Research Journal of Medicine and Medical Sciences 2(1), 14-24.

Reid, G., Jass, J., Sebulsky, M.T., McCormick J.K., 2003. Potential uses of probiotics in clinical practice. Clinical Microbiology Reviews 16, 658-672.

Reineccius, G.A., 2004. The spray drying of food flavours. Drying Technology 22 (6), 1289-1324.

© University of Pretoria

Rezzonico, E., Lariani, S., Barretto, C., Cuanoud, G., Giliberti, G., Delley, M., Arigoni, F., Pessi, G., 2007. Global transcriptome analysis of the heat shock response of *Bifidobacterium longum.* Federation of European Microbiological Societies Microbiology Letter 271 (1), 136-145.

Rijnen, L., Bonneau, S., Yvon, M., 1999. Genetic characterisation of the major Lactococal aromatic aminotransferase and its involvement in conversion of amino acids to aroma compounds. Applied Environmental Microbiology 65, 4873-4880.

Riveros, B., Ferrer, J., Bórquez, R., 2009. Spray drying of a vaginal probiotic strain of *Lactobacillus acidophilus*. Drying Technology 27,123-132.

Roberfroid, M.B., 2000. Non digestible oligosaccharides. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition 40, 461-480.

Rohm, H., 1992. Viscosity determination of stirred yoghurt. Lebensmittle-Wissenschaft and Technologie 28, 319-322.

Rohm, H., Kovac, A., Kneifel, W., 1994. Effects of starter cultures on sensory properties of set style yoghurt determined by quantitative descriptive analysis. Journal of Sensory Studies 9, 171-186.

Rokka, S., Rantamäki, P., 2010. Protecting probiotic bacteria by microencapsulation: challenges for industrial application. European Food Research Technology 231, 1-12.

Rossi, M., Corradini, C., Amanetti, A., Nicolin, M., Pompei, A., Zanomi, S., Matteuzzi, D., 2005. Fermentation of FOS and Inulin by Bifidobacteria: a comparative study of pure and faecal cultures. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 71 (10), 6150-6158.

Ruiz, L., Madiedo, R.P., Gueimonde, M., de los Reyes- Gavilán, C.G., Margolles, A., Sánchez, B., 2011. How do bifidobacteria counteract environmental challenges / mechanisms involved and physiological consequences? Genes and Nutrition 6, 307-318.

© University of Pretoria

Salimen, S., Isolauri, E., 2009. Probiotics and allergy. Prebiotics and Probiotics Science and Technology 977-995.

Sanchez, B., Champomier-Vergies, M.C., Collado, M.C., Anglade, P., Baraige, F., Sanz, Y., de los Reyes-Gavilán, C.G., Margolles, A., Zagorec, M., 2007. Low pH adaptation and the acid tolerance response of *Bifidobacterium longum biotype longum*. Applied Environmental Microbiology 73 (20), 6450-6459.

Sanders, M.E., 1999. Probiotics. Food Technology 53, 67-77.

Sanders, M.E., Veld, J., 1999. Bringing a probiotic containing functional food to the market: Microbiological product, regulations, labelling issues. Antoine Vanleeuwenhoek 76, 293-315.

Saarela, M., Mogensen, G., Fondén, R., Mättö, J., Mattila-Sandholm, T., 2000. Probiotics bacteria: safety, functional and technological properties. Journal of Bacteriology 84, 197-215.

Sarrade, S., Guizard, C., Rios, G.M., 2003. New applications of supercritical fluids and supercritical fluid processes in separation. Separating and Purification Technology 32, 57-63.

Sartor, R.B., 1995. Current concepts of the etiology and pathogenesis of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease. Gastroenterology Clinics of North America 24, 475-507.

Sartor, R.B., 2004.Therapeutic manipulation of the enteric microflora in inflammatory bowel diseases: antibiotics, probiotics and probiotics. Gastroenterology 126, 1620-1633.

Sazawal, S., Hiremath, G., Dhinga, U., Malik, P., Deb, S., Black R.E., 2006. Efficacy of probiotics in prevention of acute diarrhoea: A meta-analysis of masked, randomised, placebo-controlled trials. The Lancet Infectious Diseases 6, 374-382.

Sekhon, B.S., Jairath, S., 2010. Prebiotics, probiotics and synbiotics: an overview. Journal Pharmaceutical Education and Research 1 (2), 13-36.

Serino, M., Luche, E., Chabo, C., Amar, J., Burcelin, R., 2009. Intestinal microflora and metabolic diseases: Review. Diabetes and Metabolism 35, 262-272.

© University of Pretoria

Schell, M.A., Karmirantzou, M., Snel, B., Vilanova, D., Berger, B., Pessi, G., Zwahlen, M.C., Desiere, F., Bork, P., Delley, M., Pridmore, R.D., Arigoni, F., 2002. The genome sequence of *Bifidobacterium longum* reflects its adaptation to the human gastrointestinal tract. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America 99 (22), 14422-14427.

Schley, P.D., Field, C.J., 2002. The immune enhancing effects of dietary fibers and prebiotics 87 (2), S221-S230.

Shah, N.P., 1993. Effectiveness of dairy products in alleviation of lactose intolerance. Food Australia 45, 268-271.

Shah, N.P., 2000. Probiotic Bacteria: Selective enumeration and survival in dairy foods. Journal Dairy Science 83, 894-907.

Shah, N.P., 2007. Functional cultures and health benefits (Review). International dairy Journal 17, 1262-1277.

Sheu, T.Y., Marshall R.T., 1993. Micro-encapsulation of lactobacilli in calcium alginate gels. Journal of Food Science 54, 557-561.

Sheu, M.T., Hsia, A.H.O., 2001. Polygycolised saturated glycerides as carrier and enhancer for drug penetration. Chinese Pharmacology Journal 53, 107-111.

Shin, S.Y., Park, J.H., 1997. Activities of oxidative enzymes related with oxygen tolerance in bifidobacteria spp. Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology 7, 356-359.

Shornikova, A.V., Isolauri, E., Burnakova, L., Lukovnikova, S., Vesikari, T., 1997a. A trial in the Karelian republic of oral rehydration and *Lactobacillus* GG for treatment of acute diarrhoea. Acta Paediatrica 86, 460-465.

Shornikova, A.V., Casa, I.A., Isolauri, E., 1997b. *Lactobacillus reuteri* as a therapeutic agent in acute diarrhoea in young children. Journal of Pediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition 24(4), 399-404.

© University of Pretoria

Sidarenka, A.V., Novik, G.I., Akimov, V.N., 2008. Application of molecular methods to classification and identification of bacteria of the genus *Bifidobacterium*. Microbiology 77, 251-260.

Sinha, V.R., Rachna, K., 2001. Polysaccharides in colon–specific drug delivery. International Journal of Pharmaceutics 224, 19-38.

Smith, H., Frew, A.J., 2003. Allergy: your questions answered. Churchill Livingstone, Elsevier science limited, 3.

Song, D., Ibrahim, S., Hayek, S., 2012. Recent application of probiotics in food and agricultural science. INTECH Open Science 1, 4-36.

Stanton, C., Gardiner, G., Lynch, P.B., Collins, J.K., Fitzgerald, G., Ross, R.P., 1998. Probiotic cheese. International Dairy Journal 8 (5-6), 491-496.

Suita-Cruce, P., Goulet, J., 2001. Improving probiotic survival rates. Food Technology 55(10), 36-42.

Sullivan, A., Nord, C.E., 2005. Probiotics and gastrointestinal diseases. Journal of Internal Medicine 257, 78-92.

Sultana, K., Godward, G., Reynolds, N., Arumugaswamy, R., Peiris, P., Kailasapathy, K., 2000. Encapsulation of probiotic bacteria with alginate- starch and evaluation of survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Journal of Food Microbiology 62, 47-55.

Sun, W., Griffiths, M.W., 2000. Survival of bifidobacteria in yoghurt and simulated gastric juice following immobilisation in gellan-xanthan beads. International Journal of Food Microbiology 61, 17-25.

Surisuvor, N., Chinprahast, N., Prakitchaiwattana, C., Subhimaros, S., 2013. Effects of inulin and polydextrose on physicochemical and sensory properties of low-fat set yoghurt with probiotic-cultured banana purée. LWT- Food Science and Technology 51, 30-36.

© University of Pretoria

Suvarna, V.C., Boby, V.U., 2005. Probiotics in human health: A current assessment. Current Science 88 (11), 1744-1748.

Sutanata, W., Craig, D.Q., Newton, J.M., 1995. An evaluation of the mechanisms of drug release form glyceride bases. Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmacology 47 (3), 182-187.

Talwalkar, A., Kailasapathy, K., 2004. The role of oxygen in the viability of probiotic bacteria with reference to *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium*, spp. Current Issues Intestinal Microbiology 5, 1-8.

Tamime, A.Y., Barrantes, E., Sword, A.M., 1996. The effect of starch based fat substitutes on the microstructure of set style yoghurt made from reconstituted skimmed milk powder. Journal of the Society of Dairy Technology 49, 1-10.

Tamime, A.Y., Robinson, R.K., 1999. Yoghurt. Science and Technology, second ed. CRC press, Boca Raton, FL.

Taylor, S.A., Steer, T.E., Gibson, G.R., 1999. Diet bacteria and colonic cancer. Nutrition and Food Science 4, 187-191.

Thantsha, M.S., 2007. Cell immobilisation techniques for the preservation of probiotics. Department of Microbiology and Plant Pathology. University of Pretoria, 138-162.

Thantsha, M.S., Cloete, T.E., Moolman, F.S., Labuschagne, W.P., 2009. Supercritical carbondioxide interpolymer complexes improve survival of *B.longum Bb-46* in simulated gastrointestinal fluids. International Journal of Food Microbiology 129, 88-92.

Thibodeau, G.A., Patton, K.T., 2002. Anatomy and Physiology. St Louis, MO Mosby, 1352-1372.

Tunick, M.H., 2000. Symposium: Dairy products rheology. Journal of Dairy Science 83, 1892-1898.

© University of Pretoria

Tuohy, K.M., Finlay, R.K., Wynne, A.G., Gibson, G.R., 2001. A human volunteer study on the prebiotic effects of HP-inulin fecal bacteria enumerated using fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH). Anaerobe 7, 113-118.

Tuohy, K.M., Probert, H.M., Smejkal, S.M., Gibson, G.R., 2003. Using probiotics and prebiotics to improve gut health. Drug Discovery Today 8, 692-700.

Tuomola, E.M., Ouwehand, A.C., Salminen, S.J., 1999. The effect of probiotic bacteria on the adhesion of pathogens to human intestinal mucus. FEMS Immunology and Medical Microbiology 26 (2), 137-142.

USDA 2001, Specifications for yoghurt, non-fat yoghurt and low fat yoghurt. Document 21CFR, part 131.200-203.

Vanderhoof, J.A., 2000. Probiotics and intestinal inflammatory disorders in infants and children. Journal of Paediatric Gastroenterology and Nutrition 30, S34-S38.

Vanderhoof, J.A., Young, R.J., 2003. Role of probiotics in the management of patients with food allergy. Annals of Allergy, Asthma and Immunology 90, 99-103.

Vasiljevic, T., Shah, N.P., 2008. Probiotics-from Metchnikoff to bioactives. International Dairy Journal 18, 714-728.

Vasishtha, N., 2003. Microencapsulation: Delivering a market advantage. Internet: http//www.preparedfoods.com Access date: 15/09/2004.

Veal, D.A., Deere, D., Ferrari, B., Piper, J., Atfield, P.V., 2000. Fluorescence staining and flow cytometry for monitoring microbial cells. Journal of Immunological Methods 243, 191-210.

Venter, S.C., 2007. Prebiotics: an update. Journal of Family Ecology and Consumer Sciences 35, 17-25.

© University of Pretoria

Ventura, M., Canchaya, C., Meylan, V., Klaenhammer, T.R., Zink, R., 2003. Analysis, characterisation, and loci of the *tuf* genes in *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* species and their direct application for species identification. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 69, 6908-6922.

Verrips, C.T., Van de Berg, D.J., 1996. Barriers to application of genetically modified lactic acid bacteria. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 70,299-316.

Vesa, T.H., Marteau, P., Korpela, R., 2000. Lactose intolerance. Journal of the American College of Nutrition 19, 165S-175S.

Vidhyalakshmi, R., Bhakyaraji, C., Subhasree, R.S., 2009. Science and Technology - A review. Advances in Biological Research 3 (3-4), 96-103.

Vliagoftis, H., Kouranos, V.D., Betsi, G.I., Falagas, M.E., 2008. Probiotics for the treatment of allergic rhinitis and asthma: systemic review of randomized controlled trials. Annals of Allergy and Asthma Immunology 101, 570-579.

Wagner, M., Horn, M., Daims, H., 2003. Fluorescence in situ hybridisation for the identification and characterisation of prokaryotes. Current Opinion in Microbiology 6, 302-309.

Walstra, P., Geurts, T.J., Noomen, A., Jellema, A., Van Boekel, M.A.J.S., 1999. Fermented milks. In Dairy technology 517-537. Marcel Dekker, Inc, New York.

© University of Pretoria

CHAPTER 2

Production and characterization of freeze dried Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin lipid-based synbiotic microparticles containing *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197

© University of Pretoria

2.1 Abstract

Microencapsulation as a method of protecting probiotic cells has been extensively researched. However the potential of lipid-based coating materials for the encapsulation of probiotics has not been extensively evaluated. This study aimed at the manufacturing and characterization of Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin-*Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 microparticles produced by freeze drying. Emulsions containing 1%, 1.5%, 2%, 3.5% or 5% (w/v) inulin were prepared, with or without a centrifugation step before freeze drying. Morphological properties, particle size distribution and encapsulation efficiency of the resulting microparticles as well as their ability to preserve viability of the enclosed *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells were evaluated. The microparticles produced from both formulations were irregular, porous with concavities and contained high number of bacterial cells. High bacteria viability was obtained with non-centrifuged formulations containing 2% (w/v) inulin. Formulations with and without inulin had average particle sizes of 33.4 µm and 81.0 µm with encapsulation efficiencies of 82% and 88%, respectively. Thus, Vegetal-inulin microparticles produced by freeze drying have the potential to protect, deliver adequate amounts of probiotics and minimally affect the organoleptic properties of food products to which they will be added.

Keywords: Probiotics, *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197, Inulin, Microencapsulation, Freeze drying, Vegetal BM 297 ATO.

© University of Pretoria

2.2 Introduction

There has been an increasing interest in probiotics as a health promoting tool due to the health benefits they provide (Sultana et al., 2000). These health benefits include relief from constipation, lactose intolerance and irritable bowel syndrome (Fooks and Gibson, 2002; Talwalkar and Kailasapathy, 2004; Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). The strains which represent probiotics include, but are not limited to lactobacilli and bifidobacteria (Adhikari et al., 2000). Bifidobacteria strains are Gram positive, non-motile, rod shaped and anaerobic in nature. These bacteria are however, sensitive to light, moisture, oxidation and acidic environments. Hence, they do not remain viable during gastrointestinal transit and in certain food products (Adhikari et al., 2000). Probiotic strains would benefit from a physical barrier which can protect them from unfavourable environmental conditions. This in turn leads to an improvement in their survival during food processing and gastrointestinal transit (Brinques et al., 2011).

Microencapsulation has been successfully used by food industries to improve survival of probiotic strains (Sheu and Marshall, 1993; Doleyres and Lacroix, 2005; Appelquist et al., 2007; Chen and Chen, 2007; Pimentel-González et al., 2009; Thantsha et al., 2009; Chávarri et al., 2012). Microencapsulation entails entrapping or immobilising (coating) live microbial cells in capsules or matrices, which provide a physical barrier to harsh conditions and enables their sensitive bioactive contents/ living cells to be released at controlled rates and in specific environments in a viable/functional state (Champagne and Fustier, 2007; Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). The overall objective of this procedure is to produce particle sizes ranging from 100 µm to 1 mm and extend shelf life of the probiotic cells (Champagne and Fustier, 2007; Petrovic et al., 2007). The microparticles within this size range have been produced by various methods of microencapsulation and are reported to not negatively affect the organoleptic properties of the foods into which they are incorporated (Anal and Singh, 2007; Zuidam and Shimoni, 2010; Burgain et al., 2011).

Freeze drying is a microencapsulation technique which has been used in combination with food matrices and cryoprotectants to protect probiotic bacteria (Chen et al., 2006; Meng et al., 2008; Pop et al., 2012). Studies have shown that in addition to damage to the membrane lipids and DNA of cells, freeze drying also affects the microparticle size and morphology of

© University of Pretoria

microparticles, thus altering their protective function towards probiotics (Champagne et al., 1991; Mortazavian et al., 2007; Meng et al., 2008). Precautions must be taken to reduce cell damage caused by the formation of ice crystals and high osmolarity, which occurs during freezing (Meng et al., 2008). Cryoprotectants such as skim milk, lactose, glucose and fructose have been used to suspend the cells before freeze drying (Chen et al., 2006). On the other hand, freeze drying is well suited for the preservation of probiotic cells because it avoids heat induced injuries to cells and it slows down most chemical reactions (Carvalho et al., 2004; Capela et al., 2006). Since this method occurs in a vacuum and in the absence of oxygen, the possibility of having an oxidative reaction is reduced (Carvalho et al., 2004).

Matrices which have been utilised for encapsulation include alginate, κ-carrageenan, chitosan and gellan gum) (Picot and Lacroix, 2004; Rokka and Rantamäki, 2010). Similarly, the addition of prebiotics such as inulin is another approach which has been used to improve protection of probiotics (Özer et al., 2005; Capela et al., 2006; Chen et al., 2006). Inulin is a prebiotic which resists hydrolysis by saliva and small intestine enzymes, thus has the potential to protect probiotics until they reach the colon (Gibson and Roberfroid, 1995; Corcoran et al., 2004; Özer et al., 2005; Akalin and Erisir, 2008; Peighambardoust et al., 2011; Fritzen-Freire et al., 2012). However, there are limited reports on the successful encapsulation of probiotics in lipid based coating materials. Therefore, the aim of this study was to manufacture and characterize the freeze dried Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin microparticles containing *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 based, on their morphology, particle size distribution, encapsulation efficiency and distribution of bacteria within the matrix.

2.3 Materials and Methods

2.3.1 Reagents and bacterial cultures

Biogapress Vegetal BM 297 ATO was obtained in powdered form from (Gattefossé SAS). *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 cultures were obtained from BCCM/LMG Culture collection (Belgium) as 20% glycerol stocks in MRS broth at -70°C and revived according to the manufacturer's specifications. Inulin (purity: 95%), polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) 87-89% partially hydrolysed (Mw: 13000-23000 Da), lactose monohydrated (purity: 99%) were

© University of Pretoria

obtained from Sigma Aldrich, South Africa, while dichloromethane (DCM) (analytical grade, purity: 99%) was obtained from Sigma Aldrich Laborchemikalien, Seelze.

2.3.2 Bacterial culturing and enumeration

Frozen stocks of *B. longum* LMG 13197 were allowed to thaw and then streaked out onto MRS agar plates and incubated in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C strip for 48 h at 37°C to obtain single colonies. A single colony was then inoculated into 5 ml MRS-cys-HCl broth and incubated anaerobically overnight at 37°C. One millilitre of the culture was then inoculated into 100 ml of MRS-cys-HCL broth and incubated anaerobically at 37°C overnight. This culture was subsequently subcultured into fresh 100 ml MRS-cys-HCL broth and grown as previously described. From the grown cultures, 1 ml was used for bacteria enumeration after dilution in Ringer's solution. A subsample of 100 µl was taken from the broth culture and suspended in 900 µl of ¼ strength Ringer's solution. A 10-fold serial dilution was performed and cells were plated out onto MRS-cys-HCL agar in triplicates and plates were incubated (General purpose incubator, Shel Lab) at 37°C for 72 h under anaerobic conditions. After incubation, number of viable cells were determined and recorded as cfu/ml.

2.3.3 Bacteria encapsulation

Encapsulation of bacteria was done according to the method used by Pimentel-Gonzalez et al. (2009) with modifications. One millilitre of *B. longum* LMG 13197 grown cultures was inoculated into each of the eight 250 ml flasks containing 100 ml of de Man-Rogosa-Sharpe (MRS) medium broth supplemented with 0.05% (w/v) of L-cysteine-HCL and incubated anaerobically at 37°C for 48 h. After incubation, the cultures were harvested by centrifugation, using the Eppendorf centrifuge 5804R (cooled to 4°C) at 20 800 g for 15 min. The pelleted cells were washed once with Ringer's solution and kept at 4°C for 5 min before encapsulation. A stable emulsion was prepared to allow for freeze drying. The first emulsion was prepared by suspending 0.7 g of bacteria (equivalent to 3.2×10^9 cfu/ml^{-1}) into 1 ml of a range of inulin solution 1%, 1.5%, 2%, 3.5% and 5% (w/v). The entire contents of each mixture were added to 1 ml of 2% (w/v) poly-vinyl-alcohol (PVA). The resulting 2 ml was finally added to 10 ml dichloromethane (DCM) containing Vegetal BM 297 ATO at a final

© University of Pretoria

concentration of 10% (w/v). These emulsions were homogenised (Silverson, L4R) at 8000 rpm for 5 min and left to stand at 25°C for 2 min. The second emulsions were prepared by mixing 15 ml of PVA 2% (w/v) and 5 ml of lactose 5% (w/v). The first emulsions were poured into the second emulsions and homogenised (Silverson, L4R, NIMR) at 8000 rpm for 5 min. The stable emulsions produced were allowed to stand in the fume hood for 5 h, to ensure evaporation of DCM.

After DCM evaporation, two formulations were produced from the stable emulsion. For preparation of formulation one (F1), the emulsion was frozen at – 20°C overnight and then freeze dried for 72 h in a Virtis bench top, SLC, freeze dryer at a condenser temperature and vacuum pressure of – 60°C and 0.26 millitor, respectively. For formulation two (F2), the emulsion was centrifuged at 10°C and 20 800 g for 10 min using an Eppendorf 5804R centrifuge. The pellet obtained was suspended in 6 ml of deionised water and then frozen at – 20°C overnight. This was then followed by freeze drying for 72 h as previously done for formulation one. The same protocol was used to prepare Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles encapsulating *B. longum* LMG 13197 without inulin. In this case, bacterial culture was suspended in 1 ml of deionised water. Control sample (unencapsulated cells) was prepared by resuspending *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells (approximately 3.2×10^{9} cfu/ml^{-1}) into 25 ml of sterile Ringer's solution and fast-frozen in liquid nitrogen for 5 min. The fast-frozen cells were then frozen at – 70ºC for 1 hr before freeze drying (Virtis bench top, SLC, freeze dryer) for 3 days at -75ºC. After freeze drying, all the samples were stored in tightly sealed sterile Schott bottles at 4ºC for further analysis.

2.3.4 Encapsulation efficiency

Encapsulation efficiency was determined by suspending 0.1 g of microparticles obtained from each formulation in 900 µl of DCM. Serial dilutions were performed using ¼ strength Ringer's solution and then 100 µl of each dilution was plated out onto MRS-cys-HCI agar in triplicates using the pour plate method. Plates were incubated at 37°C for 72 h under anaerobic conditions (Anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strip). Encapsulation efficiency was calculated after colonies were counted using the equation below:

© University of Pretoria

$$EE\% = \frac{\text{(Total bacteria released from matrix)}}{\text{(Total bacteria before encapsulation)}} \times 100$$

2.3.5 Particle size analysis

Particle size distribution and mean particle size of the samples were analysed using a Malvern Mastersizer (Mastersizer MS3000, Malvern Instruments UK). The Mastersizer uses a laser diffraction technique which measures the intensity of light scattered as the laser beam passes through the samples which were dispersed in water. Triplicate samples of each dried formulation were measured at 25°C and their particle sizes were calculated.

2.3.6 Microscopy

2.3.6.1 Scanning electron microscopy

Microparticle morphology and bacterial distribution within microparticles was studied using a scanning electron microscope (SEM) according to the method of Qiang Zou et al. (2011). Freeze dried microparticles encapsulating bacteria were coated with carbon before gold sputtering under argon atmosphere (Emitech K550X, Ashford, UK). In addition, the microparticles were frozen in liquid nitrogen and ground using mortar and pestle. This enabled proper viewing of the bacterial distribution within the microparticles. The ground microparticles were transferred to aluminium pins using double sided adhesive tape and sputtered with gold before viewing under a JSM-5800 microscope (JEOL, Tokyo, Japan) (Mamvura et al., 2011).

2.3.6.2 Confocal laser scanning microscopy

Confocal laser scanning microscopy (CLSM) was also used for viewing of live and dead bacterial cells within the microparticles using a glycerol based staining method after staining with LIVE/DEAD® BacLight™ kit, according to Auty et al. (2001), with minor modifications. The stains, 1.5 µl of propidium iodide and 1.5 µl of SYTO9 were separately diluted into 1 ml of sterile water. Then, 100 µl of each dilute stain were added into 100 µl of

© University of Pretoria

glycerol and vortexed. Ten microlitres of this solution, was poured onto 10 µg of each freeze dried microparticles on a microscope slide. The slide was incubated in the dark for 15 min and viewed using a Zeiss 510 META confocal laser scanning microscope (Jena, Germany). Imaging was performed under the 100 X magnification lens and confocal illumination was provided by a 488 nm Ar/Kr laser.

2.3.7 Statistical analysis

Mean values and standard deviations were calculated from the data obtained from three independent trials. Data was analysed using one way ANOVA (analysis of variance) and a p-value less than 0.05 was considered to be statistically significant. Analysis was performed using JMP Statistical discovery software.

2.4 Results and Discussion

2.4.1 Comparison of formulations

A total of ten different formulations (section 2.3.3) encapsulating *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 in varying concentrations of inulin in Vegetal were produced. This was done to determine which concentration of inulin resulted in better protection and survival of *B. longum* during the freeze drying process. Two different methods for freeze drying were also tested to determine which one led to less reduction in viable cells. The bifidobacteria counts obtained from all formulations containing 1% and 1.5% (w/v) inulin concentrations were lower than 6 log cfu/g (Fig 2.1) and thus were not considered for further experiments. Since viable counts less than 6 log cfu/g indicate that the formulations did not protect the bacteria during the freeze drying process. Thus, the viability and functionality of the probiotic cells were greatly reduced and will not provide the required health benefits. The highest probiotic counts were obtained for 2%, 3.5% and 5% (w/v) inulin without centrifugation. These counts were 6.3, 6 and 6.2 log cfu/g respectively, and were not significantly different ($p>0.05$) (Fig 2.1). The losses in viable cells from an initial of 9.5 log cfu/g were 3.1, 3.5 and 3.2 log cfu/g for inulin (2%, 3.5% and 5% w/v) respectively. Encapsulation efficiencies of 82%, 80% and 81.4% were achieved for microparticles containing 2%, 3.5% and 5% (w/v) inulin respectively (Fig 2.2). These results indicate that the microparticles obtained with 2% (w/v)

© University of Pretoria

inulin performed slightly better than the others because they resulted in better protection of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during freeze drying process. Addition of more inulin in the formulation did not result in enhanced protection during freeze drying. Researchers elsewhere have also reported that addition of 2% (w/v) inulin enhanced the growth of probiotic cells in food products (Boeni and Pourahmad, 2012). Microparticles produced with 2% (w/v) inulin were therefore further characterized in this study.

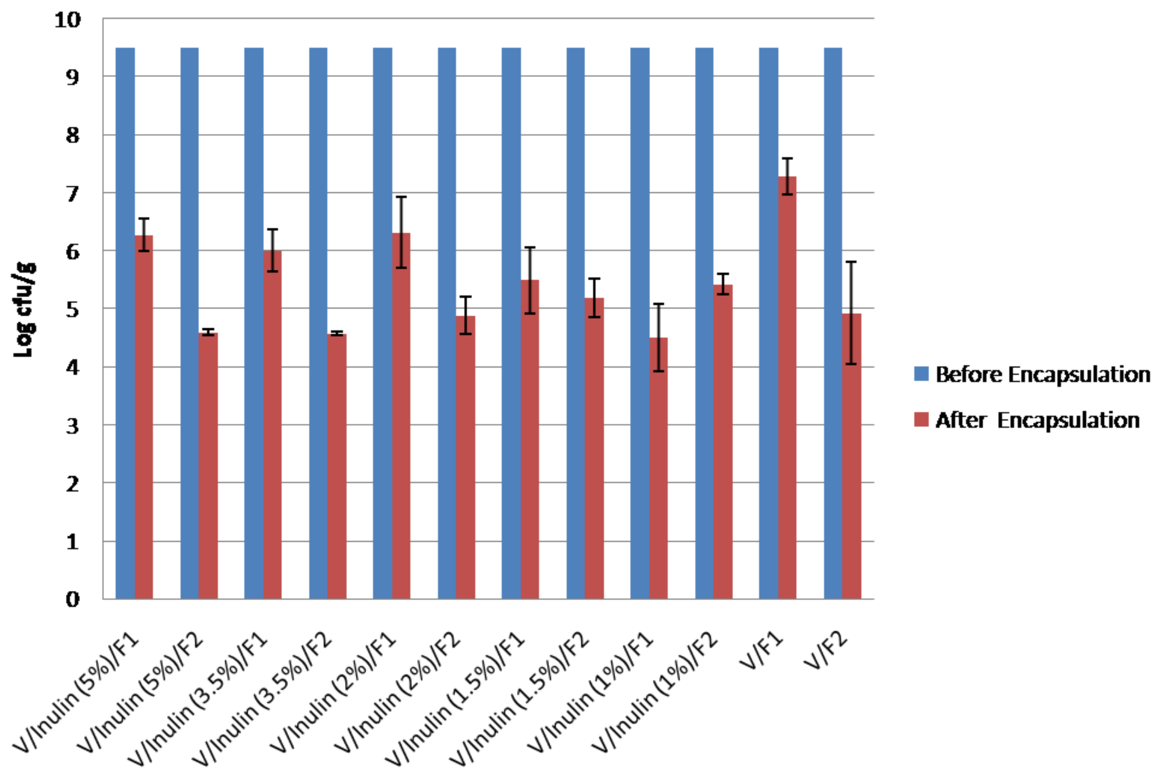


Figure 2.1 Viable numbers of bacteria released from the different microparticles before and after freeze drying in different formulations. F1= no centrifugation, F2= centrifugation + water, V= Vegetal BM 297 ATO. Each bar represents the mean of triplicate data from three independent trials; error bars represent standard deviations.

© University of Pretoria

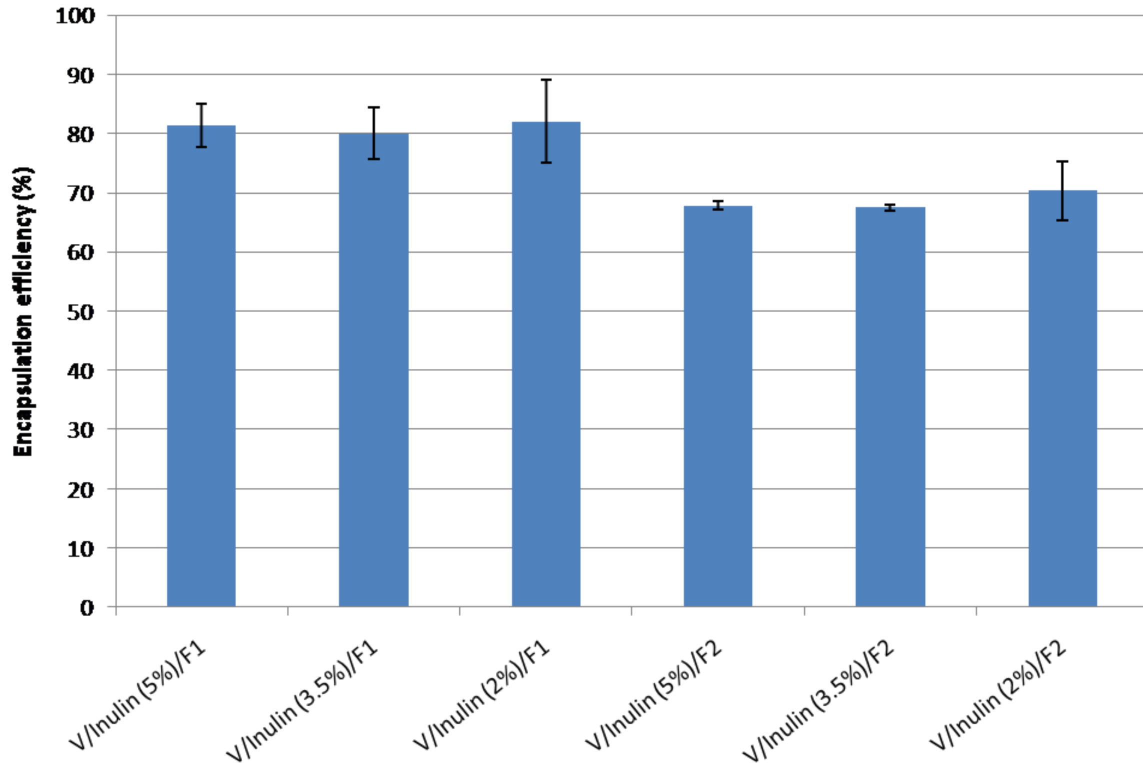


Figure 2.2 Encapsulation efficiencies of microparticles produced with formulations containing different inulin concentrations. F1= no centrifugation, F2= centrifugation + water, V = Vegetal BM 297 ATO. Each bar represents the mean of triplicate data from three independent trials; error bars represent standard deviations.

The bifidobacteria counts obtained from formulations without inulin were 7.3 and 4.9 log cfu/g without and with centrifugation step; respectively (Fig 2.1). The formulation with a count of 4.9 log cfu/g was not further analysed, for reasons previously stated. Therefore, our results show that high numbers of viable cells were obtained from non-centrifuged formulation (F1) without inulin and formulation (F1) with 2% (w/v) inulin (Fig 2.1). This shows that encapsulation with Vegetal-inulin matrix protected the cells during encapsulation process as a high number of them were realised after encapsulation. It was also observed that the formulations produced with centrifugation resulted in lower viable counts (Fig 2.1). Low bacterial counts could have been caused by the disruption of emulsion and release of cells during centrifugation. Gilbert et al. (1991) reported reduced viability in log phase bacterial cells after centrifugation at 5000 to 20 000 g for 5 to 20 min. Centrifugation results in bacterial compaction which causes bacterial cells to collide with one another, which in turn increases shear forces that damage their DNA and cell surface properties (Allan and Pearce,

© University of Pretoria

1979; Gilbert et al., 1991; Pembrey et al., 1999). Thus, bacterial cells suffer sub-lethal injuries which alter their metabolic and physiological abilities, such as salt or acidic tolerance, adhesion to surfaces, survival in selective media as well as their ability to form colonies (Wayber et al., 1994; Peterson et al., 2012).

2.4.2 Particle size distribution and encapsulation efficiency

After particle size analysis, the average particle size distribution of the microparticles produced is shown in Fig 2.3. The mean diameter obtained for microparticles produced with and without inulin were 33.4 ± 3.0 µm and 80.9 ± 20.3 µm (mean ± standard deviation, n= 6) respectively (Table 2.1). The D values (Table 2.1) indicate the percentage of the volume or weight of the particles that is smaller than the actual size. Therefore, D_{90} values of both formulations produced with and without inulin indicate that 90% of the particles had diameters less than 33.4 µm and 80.9 µm respectively and they are both within the required range (<100 µm) for microparticles for food applications (Hansen et al., 2002). However, results show that the addition of inulin resulted in the production of much smaller particle size (Table 2.1). This is desirable as smaller microparticles are stable, easier to handle and may not negatively affect the organoleptic properties of foods (Doleyres and Lacroix, 2005). These results are in agreement with the findings of Fritzen-Freire et al. (2012) who reported that addition of inulin resulted in a decrease in microparticle size, when compared to the control. However, Okuro et al. (2013) reported that the presence of inulin did not affect the lipid microparticle sizes, when compared to the control. Comparing the size of microparticles from other studies (Cui et al., 2006; Pop et al., 2012; Heidebach et al., 2012) with the lipid based microparticles produced in this study; it can be concluded that the presence of inulin in the formulation enhanced the food applications attributes of microparticles made from Vegetal BM 297 ATO.

High encapsulation efficiency indicates that a high number of viable cells were encapsulated and thus can administer the minimum amount required for health benefits (Champagne et al., 2005). Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles produced with and without inulin (without centrifugation step) gave encapsulation efficiencies of 82% and 88% respectively (Table 2.1). These results indicate that a high percentage of bacteria cells were retained in the matrix during encapsulation. Studies have reported that microcapsules with encapsulation

© University of Pretoria

efficiencies of 70% using an emulsion process, and have been shown to release high number of cells where needed (Heidebach et al., 2012). Pop et al. (2012) also reported an encapsulation efficiency of 66.87% for the encapsulation of *B. lactis* 300B with alginate/pullulan. When comparing the encapsulation efficiencies obtained in the aforementioned studies to those obtained in this study, it can be observed that although the presence of inulin reduced encapsulation efficiency, the use of Vegetal BM 297 ATO as a coating material for *B. longum* LMG 13197 resulted in higher encapsulation efficiencies.

© University of Pretoria

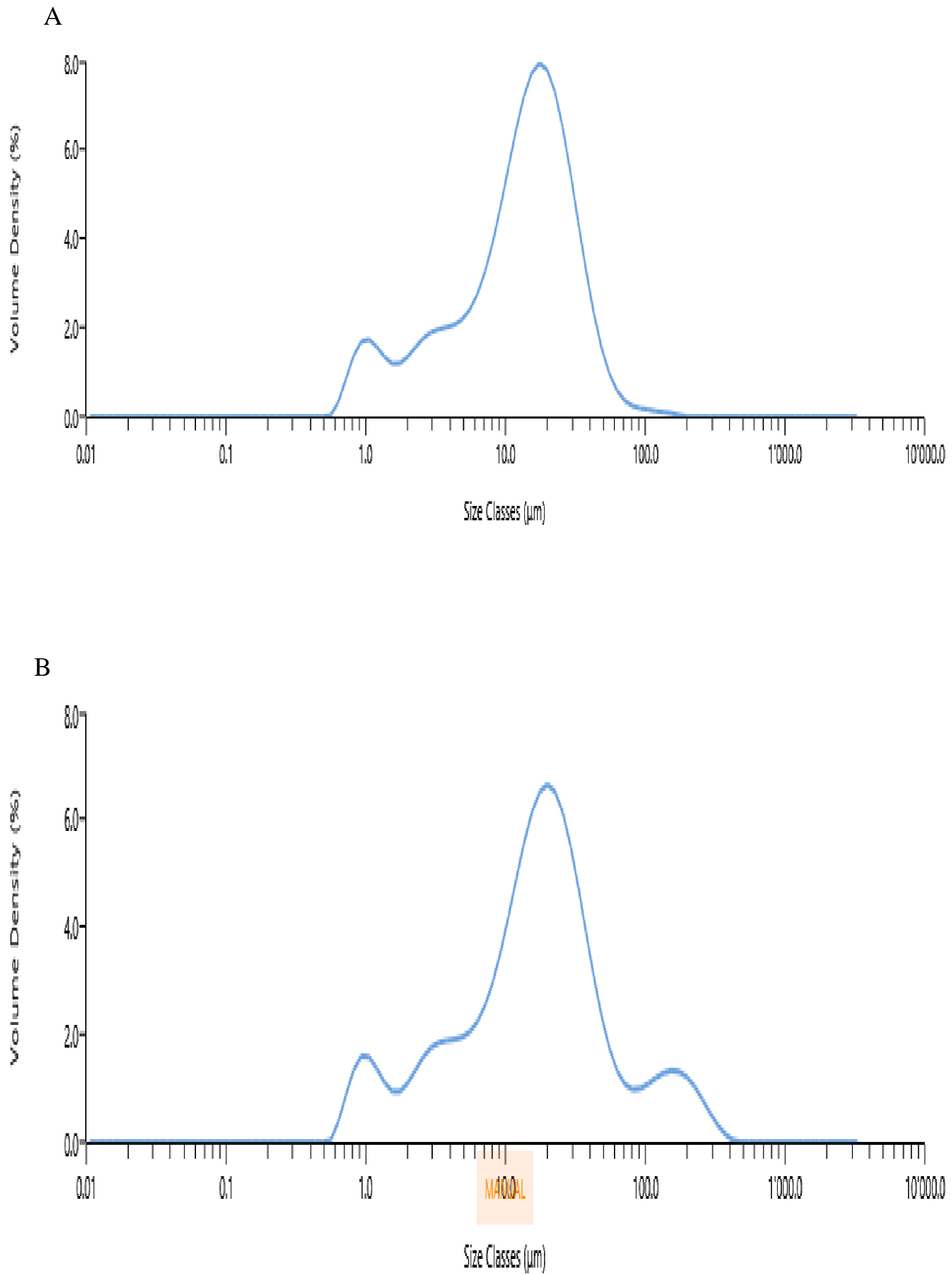


Figure 2.3 Average particle size distributions of Vegetal microparticles (A) with 2% inulin and (B) without inulin.

© University of Pretoria

Table 1 – Mean particles size and encapsulation efficiency of non-centrifuged Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin microparticles.

Microparticle formulation	**Mean particle size (µm ± standard deviation)**			**EE (%)**
	D10	D50	D90	
Without inulin	2.2 ± 0.1	17.1 ± 1.1	80.9 ± 20.3	88
With inulin	2.0 ± 0.1	13.8 ± 0.8	33.4 ± 2.9	82

Reported values are means of triplicate readings from three independent trials, EE = Encapsulation efficiency

2.4.3 Morphological characterization and bacterial loading within microparticles

Scanning electron microscopy showed a high loading of rod to coccoid shaped bacterial cells within the microparticles (Fig 2.4B and D) and free bacterial cells with no coverings around them for the unencapsulated sample (Fig 2.4E). The presence of coccoid cells within the microparticles is attributed to the change in bifidobacteria morphology during their exposure to the stressful cold and dry conditions associated with freeze drying process. Studies have shown that when bifidobacteria are exposed to environmental stresses, their rod shape appearance can change (Biavati et al., 2000; Boylston et al., 2004). There were no visible bacterial cells between or on the surfaces of the microparticles of both formulations (Fig 2.4A and C), which confirms that there was efficient encapsulation. Furthermore, SEM revealed irregular shaped microparticles, which exhibited rough surfaces with visible concavities and few pores (Fig 2.4A and C), as has been reported in other studies (Sheu and Marshall, 1993; Sultana et al., 2000; De Castro-Cislaghi et al., 2012; Fritzen-Freire et al., 2012). In this study, the presence of irregular shaped microparticles exhibiting pores and concavities can be attributed to the shrinkage of particles which occurs during drying processes. This process can change the physical, chemical and biological properties of the encapsulation matrix, which possibly reduces its ability to protect cells from stressful conditions (Fritzen-Freire et al., 2012; Martin-Dejardin et al., 2013). Porous microparticles are not desirable because

© University of Pretoria

presence of pores will result in premature release of bacteria from the microparticles (Ravi et al., 2008). However, since only few pores were observed, there is a possibility that the release of bacterial cells from the matrix will be minimal, though further investigation is required to prove this.

© University of Pretoria

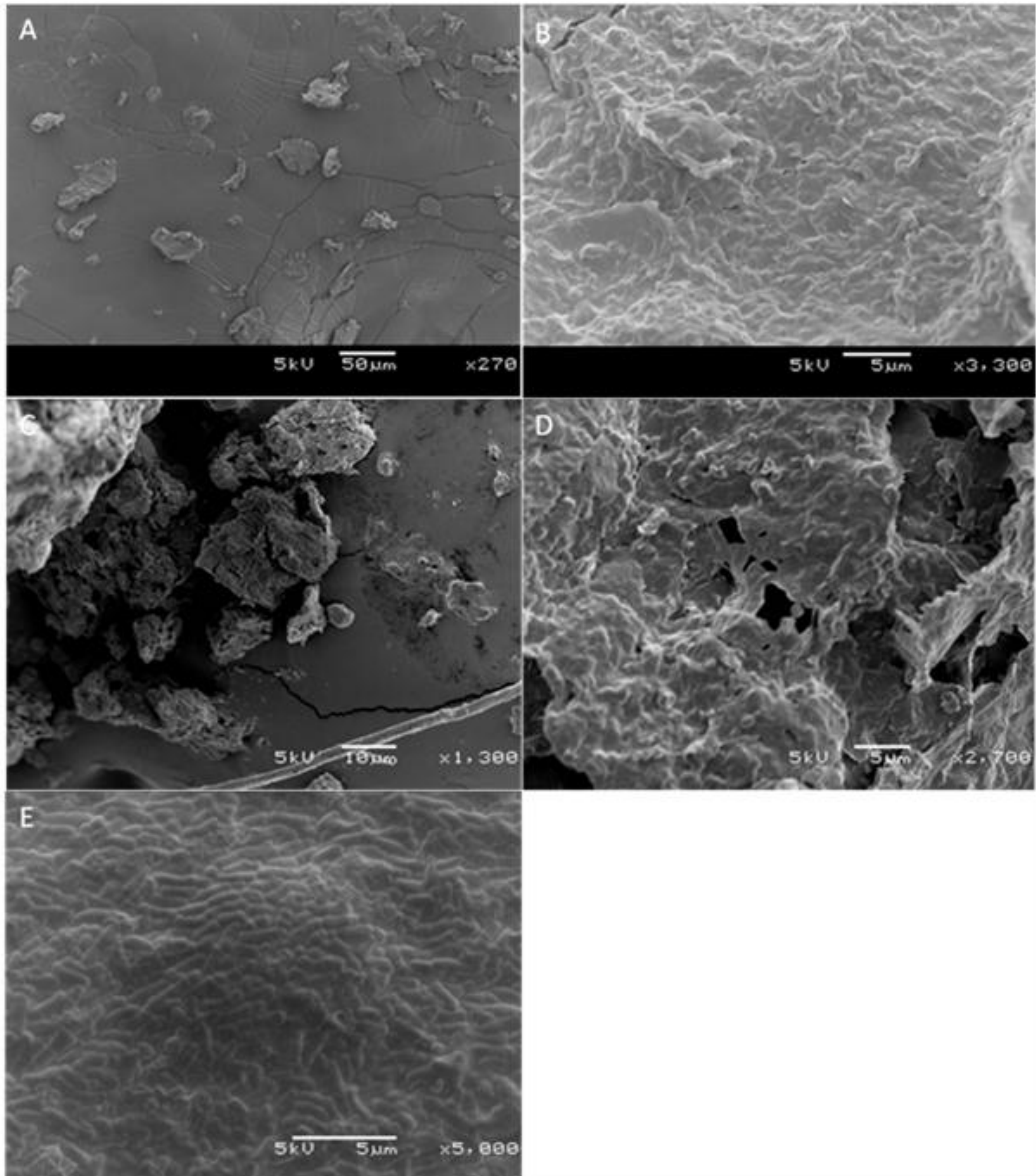


Figure 2.4 SEM images showing Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles with and without inulin (A and C) morphology and particle size, (B and D) distribution of *B. longum* LMG 13197 within the microparticles, (E) unencapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197.

The confocal laser scanning microscopy images distinguish between dead and live bacterial cells. This is made possible by the use of a LIVE/DEAD BacLight kit, which has been utilised by various researchers (Alakomi et al., 2005; Berney et al., 2007). The kit contains

© University of Pretoria

two nucleic acid stains; SYTO9 (green fluorescence) which stains both live and dead cells and Propidium iodide (red fluorescence) which stains cells with compromised or damaged membranes (Alakomi et al., 2005). However, when both stains are taken up, the propidium iodide (PI) displaces the SYTO9 stains in damaged and dead cells (Alakomi et al., 2005). Auty et al. (2001) developed a glycerol based method, which was used in this study to allow for viewing of probiotic cells with minimal or no dissolution of the encapsulating matrix. The CSLM images showed that microparticles produced with and without inulin contained a high loading of fluorescent bifidobacteria cells (Fig 2.5A and B). Some of the cells were released and dispersed throughout and on the surface of the microparticles (Fig 2.5A and B), possibly increasing their exposure to detrimental factors such as oxygen dissemination into the matrix. The few cells that are released and dispersed throughout and on the surface of the microparticles suggests cells that were not completely embedded deep within the matrix, and are thus close to the surface of the matrix. The partially dissolved matrix fluoresced green at a high intensity than some of the bacterial cells (Fig 2.5A and B). There was a mixture of live (green) and compromised (yellow) cells in microparticles produced with inulin (Fig 2.5A). The yellow colour indicates that the cell membrane had an intermediate degree of damage, which allowed PI to penetrate (Liu et al., 2007). Studies have reported that the presence of live and compromised cells in freeze dried bifidobacteria is to be expected; however, the compromised cells may recover and become viable under suitable conditions (Pop et al., 2012). There was a mixture of live (green) and dead (red) cells in microparticles produced without inulin (Fig 2.5B), with majority of the visible cells stained red. The presence of red cells indicates that the cell membranes possibly suffered irreversible cell damage during freeze drying, thus allowed PI to penetrate (Alakomi et al., 2005; Liu et al., 2007). Therefore, our results show that the addition of inulin enhanced protection of *B. longum* LMG 13197 as there were fewer dead (red) cells for bacteria encapsulated in a formulation containing inulin.

© University of Pretoria

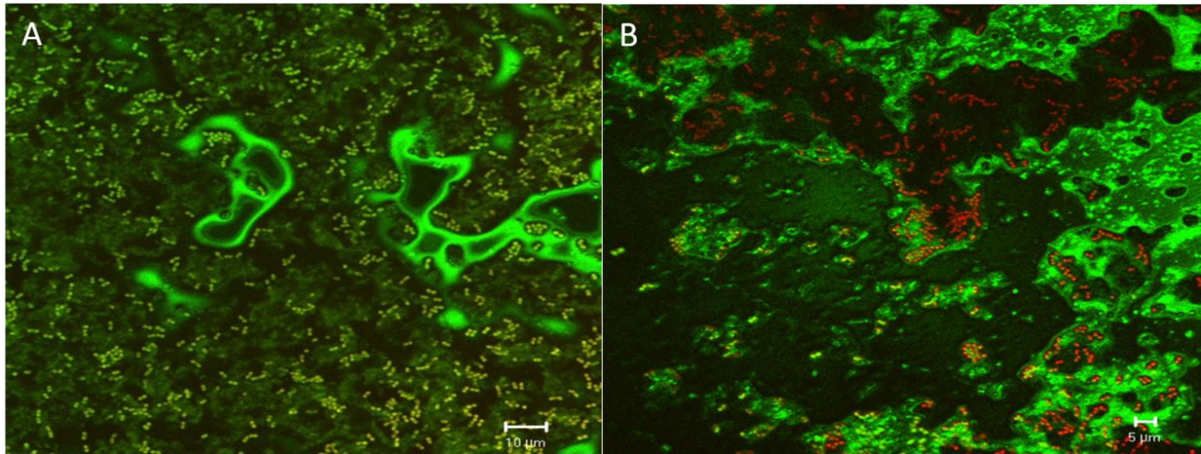


Figure 2.5 CLSM images of stained *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells within Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles, (A) with inulin, (B) without inulin. Live cells (green), damaged cells (yellow) and dead cells (red).

2.5 Conclusion

This study shows the successful production of lipid-based microparticles using Vegetal for the encapsulation of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 by freeze drying method. Addition of inulin reduced the size (33.4 µm) but did affect the morphology of microparticles, with an associated slight reduction of the encapsulation efficiency. Nevertheless, the encapsulation efficiency was still high enough to indicate that a large number of cells were retained in the matrix. Thus, the results show that synbiotic Vegetal-inulin microparticles produced by freeze drying have the potential for use as a functional food additive, as they are likely to deliver sufficient numbers of viable bacteria.

© University of Pretoria

2.6 References

Adhikari, K., Mustapha, A., Grün, I.U., Fernando, L., 2000. Viability of Microencapsulated bifidobacteria in set yoghurt during refrigerated storage. Journal of Dairy Science 83 (9), 1946-1951.

Akalin, A.S., Erisir, D., 2008. Effects of inulin and oligofructose on the rheological characteristics and probiotic culture survival in low fat probiotic ice cream. Journal of Food Science 73 (4), M184-M188.

Alakomi, H. L., Mättö, J., Virkajärvi, I., Saarela, M., 2005. Application of microplate scale fluorochrome staining assay for the assessment of viability of probiotic preparations. Journal of Microbiological Methods 62, 25-35.

Allan, I., Pearce, J.H., 1979. Modulation by centrifugation of cell susceptibility to Chlamydial infection. Journal of General Microbiology 111, 87-92.

Anal, A.K., Singh, H., 2007. Recent advances in microencapsulation of probiotics for industrial applications and targeted delivery. Trends in Food Science and Technology 18, 240-251.

Appelquist, I, A., Golding, M., Vreeker, R., Zuidam, N.J., 2007. Emulsions as delivery systems in foods. In: Lakkis, J.M. (Ed.), Encapsulation and controlled release technologies in food systems. Black well publishing, Ames, pp. 41-81.

Auty, M.A.E., Gardiner, G.E., Mcbrearty, S.J., Osullivan, E.O., Mulvihill, D.M., Collins, J.K., Fitzgerald, G.F., Stanton, C., Ross, R.P., 2001. Direct in situ viability assessment of bacteria in probiotic dairy products using viability staining in conjunction with Confocal scanning laser microscopy. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 67, 420-425.

Berney, M., Hammes, F., Bosshard, F., Weilenmann, H-U., Egli, T., 2007. Assessment and interpretation of bacterial viability using LIVE/DEAD Baclight kit in combination with flow cytometry. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 73, 3283-3290.

© University of Pretoria

Biavati, B., Vescovo, M., Torriani, S., Bottazzi, V., 2000. Bifidobacteria: history, ecology, physiology and applications. Annals of Microbiology 50, 117-131.

Boeni, S., Pourahmad, R., 2012. Use of inulin and probiotic lactobacilli in synbiotic yoghurt production. Annals of Biological Research 3 (7), 3486- 3491.

Boylston, T.D., Vinderola, C.G., Ghoddusi, H.B., Reinheimer, J.A., 2004. Incorporation of bifidobacteria into cheeses: challenges and rewards. International Dairy Journal 14, 375-387.

Brinques, G.B., Ayub, M.A.Z., 2011. Effects of microencapsulation on survival of *Lactobacillus plantarum* in simulated gastrointestinal conditions, refrigeration and yoghurt. Journal of Food Engineering 103, 123-128.

Burgain, J., Gaiani, C., Linder, M., Scher, J., 2011. Encapsulation of probiotic living cells: from the laboratory scale to industrial applications. Journal of Food Engineering 104, 467-483.

Capela, P., Hay, T.K.C., Shah, N.P., 2006. Effect of cryoprotectants, prebiotics and microencapsulation on the survival of probiotic organisms in yoghurt and freeze dried yoghurt. Food Research International 39, 203-211.

Carvalho, A.S., Silva, J., Ho, P., Teixeira, P., Malcata, X.F., Gibbs, P., 2004. Relevant factors for the preparation of freeze dried lactic acid bacteria. International Dairy Journal 14, 835-847.

Champagne, C.P., Gardner, N., Brochu, E., Beaulieu, Y., 1991. The freeze drying of lactic acid bacteria. A Review, Canada Institution of Science and Technology Journal 4 (314), 118-128.

Champagne, C.P., Gardner, N.J., Roy, D., 2005. Challenges in the addition of probiotic cultures to foods. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition 45, 61-84.

Champagne, C.P., Fustier, P., 2007. Microencapsulation for the improved delivery of bioactive compounds into foods. Current Opinion in Biotechnology 18,184-190.

© University of Pretoria

Chávarri, M., Marañón, I., Villarán, M.C., 2012. Encapsulation technology to protect probiotic bacteria. Intech Open Science 23, 502-540.

Chen, H.C., Wen Lin, C., Chen, M.J., 2006. The effects of freeze drying and rehydration on survival of microorganisms in kefir. Asian-Australasian Journal of Animal Sciences 19 (1), 126-130.

Chen, M.J., Chen, K.N., 2007. Applications of probiotic encapsulation in dairy products. In: Lakkis, J. M. (Ed.), Encapsulation and controlled release technologies in food systems. Wiley-Blackwell, USA, pp. 83-107.

Corcoran, B.M., Ross, R.P., Fitzgerald, G.F., Stanton, C., 2004. Comparative survival of probiotic lactobacilli spray dried in the presence of prebiotic substances. Journal of Applied Microbiology 96, 1024-1039.

Cui, J.H., Cao, Q.R., Choi, Y.J., Lee, K.H., Lee, B.J., 2006. Effect of additives on the viability of bifidobacteria loaded in alginate poly-l-lysine microparticles during the freeze drying process. Archives of Pharmacal Research 29 (8), 707-711.

De Castro-Cislaghi, F.P., Carina Dos Reis, E.S., Fritzen-Freire, C.B., Lorenz, J.G., Sant'Anna, E.S., 2012. *Bifidobacterium Bb-12* microencapsulation by spray drying with whey: Survival under simulated gastrointestinal conditions, tolerance to NaCL, and viability during storage. Journal of Food Engineering 113, 186-193.

Doleyres, Y., Lacroix, C., 2005. Technologies with free and immobilised cells for probiotic bifidobacteria production and protection. International Dairy Journal 15,973-988.

Fooks, L.J., Gibson, G.R., 2002. Probiotics as modulators of the gut flora. British Journal of Nutrition 88 (1), S39-S49.

Fritzen-Freire, C.B., Prudencio, E.S., Amboni, R.D.M.C., Pinto, S.S., Negrão-Murakami, A.N., Murakami, F.S., 2012. Microencapsulation of bifidobacteria by spray drying in the presence of prebiotics. Food Research International 45, 306-312.

© University of Pretoria

Gibson, G.R., Roberfroid M.B., 1995. Dietary modulation of the human colonic microbiota: introducing the concept of prebiotics. Journal of Nutrition 125, 1401-12.

Gilbert, P., Coplan, F., Brown, M.R., 1991. Centrifugation injury of gram negative bacteria. Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy 27, 550-551.

Hansen, L.T., Allan-Wojtas, P.M., Jin, Y.L., Paulson, A.T., 2002. Survival of calcium-alginate microencapsulated *Bifidobacterium* spp in milk and in simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Food Microbiology 19, 35-45.

Heidebach, T., Först, P., Kulozik, U., 2012. Microencapsulation of probiotic cells for food applications. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition 52, 291-311.

Liu, Li-fen., Barford, J., Yeung, King-Lun., Grace, S.I., 2007. Non-UV based germicidal activity of metal-doped TiO_2 coating on solid surfaces. Journal of Environmental Sciences 19, 745-750.

Mamvura, C.I., Moolman, F.S., Kalombo, L., Hall, A.N., Thantsha, M.S., 2011. Characterisation of the Poly-(Vinylpyrrolidone)-Poly-(Vinylacetate-co-Crotonic acid) (PVP: PVAc-CA) interpolymer complex matrix microparticles encapsulating a *Bifidobacterium lactis* Bb12 probiotic strain. Probiotics and Antimicrobial Proteins 3, 97-102.

Martin-Dejardin, F., Ebel, B., Lemetais, G., Nguyen, H., Gervais, P., Cachon, R., Chambin, O., 2013. A way to follow the viability of encapsulated *Bifidobacterium bifidum* subjected to a freeze-drying process in order to target the colon: interest of flow cytometry. European Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences 49 (2), 166-174.

Meng, X.C., Stanton, C., Fitzgerald, G.F., Daly, C., Ross, R.P., 2008. Anhydrobiotics: The challenges of drying probiotic cultures. Food Chemistry 106, 1406-1416.

Mortazavian, A., Razavi, S.H., Ehsani, M., Sohrabvandi, S., 2007. Principles and methods of microencapsulation of probiotic microorganisms. Review article, Iranian Journal of Biotechnology 5 (1), 1-18.

© University of Pretoria

Okuro, P.K., Thomazini, M., Balieiro, J.C.C., Liberal, R.D.C.O., Fávaro- Trindade, C.S., 2013. Co-encapsulation of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* with inulin or polydextrose in solid lipid microparticles provides protection and improves stability. Food Research International 53, 96-103.

Özer, D., Akin, S., Özer, B., 2005. Effects of inulin and lactulose on the survival of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* LA-5 and *Bifidobacterium bifidum* BB-02 in acidophilus-bifidus yoghurt. Food Science and Technology International 11 (1), 019-026.

Peighambardoust, S.H., Tafti, G.A., Hesari, J., 2011. Application of spray drying for preservation of lactic acid starter cultures: A review. Trends in Food Science and Technology 22, 215-224.

Pembrey, R.S., Marshall, K.C., Schneider, R.P., 1999. Cell surface analysis techniques: what do cell preparation protocols do to cell surface properties? Applied Environmental Microbiology 65, 2877-2894.

Petrovic, T., Nedovic, V., Dimitrijevic, B.S., Bugarski, B., Lacroix, C. 2007. Protection of probiotic microorganism by microencapsulation. Chemical Industry and Chemical Engineering Quaterly 13 (3), 169-174.

Picot, A., Lacroix, C., 2004. Encapsulation of bifidobacteria in whey protein based microcapsules and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Dairy Journal 14, 505-515.

Pimentel-Gonzalez, D.J., Campos- Montiel, R.G., Lobato-Calleros, C., Pedroza-Islas, R., Vernon-Carter, E.J., 2009. Encapsulation of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* in double emulsions formulated with sweet whey as emulsifier and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Food Research International 42, 292-297.

Peterson, B.W., Sharma, P.K., Vander Mei, H.C., Busscher, H.J., 2012. Bacterial cell surface damage due to centrifugal compaction. Journal of Applied and Environmental Microbiology 78 (1), 120-125.

© University of Pretoria

Pop, O.L., Brandau, T., Vodnar, D.C., Socaciu, C., 2012. Study of *Bifidobacterium lactis* 300b survival during encapsulation coating and freeze drying process and the release in alkaline media. Bulletin UASVM Agriculture 69 (2), 372-379.

Qiang, Z., Zhao, J., Liu, X., Tian, F., Zhang, H-P., Zhang, H., Chen, W., 2011. Microencapsulation of *Bifidobacterium bifidum F-35* in reinforced alginate microspheres prepared by emulsification/internal gelation. International Journal of Food Science and Technology 46, 1672-1678.

Ravi, S., Peb, K.K., Darwis, Y., Murthy, B.K., Singh T.R.R., Mallikarjun, C., 2008. Development and characterization of polymeric microspheres for controlled release protein loaded drug delivery system. Indian Journal of Pharmaceutical Science 70, 303-309.

Rokka, S., Rantamäki, P., 2010. Protecting probiotic bacteria by microencapsulation: challenges for industrial application. European Food Research Technology 231, 1-12.

Sheu, T.Y., Marshall, R.T., 1993. Micro-encapsulation of lactobacilli in calcium alginate gels. Journal of Food Science 54, 557-561.

Sultana, K., Godward, G., Reynolds, N., Arumugaswamy, R., Peiris, P., Kailasapathy, K., 2000. Encapsulation of probiotic bacteria with alginate- starch and evaluation of survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Journal of Food Microbiology 62, 47-55.

Talwalkar, A., Kailasapathy, K., 2004. The role of oxygen in the viability of probiotic bacteria with reference to *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium*, spp. Current Issues Intestinal Microbiology 5, 1-8.

Thantsha, M.S., Cloete, T.E., Moolman, F.S., Labuschagne, W.P., 2009. Supercritical carbondioxide interpolymer complexes improve survival of *Bifidobacterium longum Bb-46* in simulated gastrointestinal fluids. International Journal of Food Microbiology 129, 88-92.

Vasiljevic, T., Shah N.P., 2008. Probiotics-from Metchnikoff to bioactives. International Dairy Journal 18, 714-728.

© University of Pretoria

Wyber, J.A., Andrews, J., Gilbert, P., 1994. Loss of salt-tolerance and transformation efficiency in *Escherichia coli* associated with sub-lethal injury by centrifugation. Letters in Applied Microbiology 19, 312-316.

Zuidam, N.J., Shimoni, E., 2010. Overview of microencapsulates for use in food products or processes and methods to make them. In: Zuidam, N.J and Nedovi, V.A (eds) Encapsulation Technologies for Active Food Ingredients and Food Processing 3-29.

© University of Pretoria

CHAPTER 3

Survival of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 during storage and simulated gastrointestinal fluids transit

© University of Pretoria

3.1 Abstract

Probiotics are sensitive to certain environmental factors which include gastric acid, temperature and oxygen. Over time the numbers of viable bacteria decrease to numbers below the recommended quantity for beneficial effects to be observed. Microencapsulation can be used to protect the cells during gastrointestinal transit and extend their shelf life, increasing their suitability for use as a health-promoting food additive. This study investigated the survival of Vegetal-inulin BM 297 ATO encapsulated *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 when exposed to simulated gastrointestinal fluids and different storage conditions. Samples of Vegetal BM 297 ATO encapsulated bifidobacteria (with and without inulin) and unencapsulated bacteria as control were exposed to simulated gastric fluid (SGF) (pH 2.0) for 2 h, and subsequently to simulated intestinal fluid (SIF) (pH 6.8) for 6 h. Samples taken at various times were analysed using the fluorochrome microplate assay and plate counting methods using MRS-agar supplemented with 0.05% cysteine hydrochloride. Vegetal BM 297 ATO encapsulated bifidobacteria (with and without inulin) and unencapsulated bifidobacteria were also were also stored in glass bottles at 4ºC and 25ºC for 6 weeks. Numbers of viable cells were determined on weekly basis using plate counting, fluorochrome microplate assay and flow cytometry. Vegetal matrix displayed little release of cells in SGF and significant release in SIF. The addition of inulin at 2% (w/v) improved the protection efficiency of Vegetal, and thus provided better protection to the cells during exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids. Compared to the unencapsulated cells, Vegetal encapsulation (with and without inulin) improved the survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during 6 weeks of storage at 25ºC. Encapsulation showed no significant protection at 4ºC; but Vegetal-inulin matrix did extended shelf life to 5 weeks at 4ºC. Therefore, Vegetal-inulin encapsulated bacteria can be applied in food industries with favourable storage conditions at refrigeration temperatures.

Keywords: Probiotics, Inulin, Simulated Gastric fluid, Simulated Intestinal Fluid, Vegetal BM 297 ATO, *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197, Microencapsulation.

© University of Pretoria

3.2 Introduction

Probiotics are currently used as dietary supplements or incorporated into food products (Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008; Kramer et al., 2009). In order for them to exert beneficial effects, they must remain viable and in sufficient amounts throughout their shelf life period and upon arrival in the colon (Bruno and Shah, 2003; Guarner and Malagelada, 2003; Song et al., 2012). The minimum amount of probiotics required to exert beneficial effects ranges from 10^6 to10^8 cfu/ml (Sanders and Veld, 1999). Studies have reported that the number of viable probiotic cultures decline before consumption, thus resulting in failure of products to supply the minimum amount required for health benefits (Shah et al., 2000; Vinderola et al., 2000; Suita-Cruce and Goulet, 2001). Factors which affect the viability of probiotic cultures during storage and gastrointestinal transit have been reported (Lian et al., 2002; Piano et al., 2006), and they include among others, temperature, oxygen, moisture and the presence of acid and bile in the stomach and small intestine, respectively (Thantsha et al., 2009; Weinbreck et al., 2010; Brinques et al., 2011). Bifidobacteria, one of the common probiotic species, are sensitive to these stressful factors and do not survive transit through the gastrointestinal tract (GIT), nor remain viable in food products during storage (Adhikari et al., 2000; Lourens-Hattingh and Viljoen, 2001; Hansen et al., 2002).

Microencapsulation is an effective technique used to protect and improve viability of probiotic cultures during storage and GIT transit (Sultana et al., 2000; Hansen et al., 2002; Weinbreck et al., 2010). One of the microencapsulation techniques, known as freeze drying or lyophilisation, has been purported to improve bacterial resistance to gastrointestinal fluids and promote extended shelf life of probiotics during storage (Heidebach et al., 2010; Okuro et al., 2013). Freeze drying does however; affect the physiological state of bacteria resulting in loss of viable cells (Rault et al., 2007). There is therefore an opportunity to develop new techniques of encapsulation to minimise cell death during the process. An approach which involves the addition of prebiotics before freeze drying for the improved survival of probiotics has been explored (Özer, et al., 2005; Akalin and Erisir, 2008; Heydari et al., 2011). It is worth mentioning that prebiotics are not hydrolysed in the upper part of the GIT, and therefore have the potential to protect probiotics throughout their journey to the colon (Reyed, 2007).Varying results from freeze dried combinations of probiotics and prebiotics have been reported, depending on the encapsulating matrix used (Capela et al., 2006; Pop et

© University of Pretoria

al., 2012; Cheng et al., 2013; Dianawati et al., 2013). To date however, there has been limited research on the use of lipid based matrixes in combination with prebiotics for protection of bifidobacteria during storage and GIT transit. This study aimed to assess the effect of encapsulation in Vegetal BM 297 ATO in conjunction with inulin on the survival of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 during storage and in simulated gastrointestinal fluids.

3.3 Materials and Methods

3.3.1 Reagents and bacterial cultures

Biogapress Vegetal BM 297 ATO was obtained in powdered form from (Gattefossé SAS). *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 cultures were obtained from BCCM/LMG Culture collection (Belgium) as 20% glycerol stocks in MRS broth at -70°C and revived according to the manufacturer's specifications. Inulin (purity: 95%) (purity: 99%), polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) 87-89% partially hydrolysed (Mw: 13000-23000 Da), lactose monohydrate were obtained from Sigma Aldrich, South Africa, while dichloromethane (DCM) (analytical grade, purity: 99%) was obtained from Sigma Aldrich Laborchemikalien, Seelze.

3.3.2 Bacterial culturing and enumeration

Frozen stocks of *B. longum* LMG 13197 were allowed to thaw and streaked out onto MRS-cys-HCl agar plates and incubated in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C strip for 48 h at 37°C to obtain single colonies. A single colony was then inoculated into 5 ml MRS-cys-HCl broth and grown anaerobically overnight at 37°C. One millilitre of this overnight culture was then subcultured twice on separate occasions into 100 ml of MRS-cys-HCl broth and incubated anaerobically at 37°C overnight. One millilitre of the culture was used for bacteria enumeration after dilution in Ringer's solution. A subsample of 100 µl was taken from the broth culture and suspended in 900 µl of ¼ strength Ringer's solution. A 10-fold serial dilution up to 10^{-10} dilution was performed and 100 µl of each dilution was plated out onto MRS-cys-HCl agar in triplicates and plates were incubated (General purpose incubator, Shel Lab) at 37°C for 72 h under anaerobic conditions. After incubation, number of viable cells were determined and recorded as cfu/ml. After

© University of Pretoria

enumeration, 3 ml of the remaining culture was used for bacterial encapsulation while the rest was stored in 10% sterile glycerol at -20°C.

3.3.3 Bacteria encapsulation

Bacteria encapsulation was done using the method of Pimentel-Gonzalez et al. (2009) with modifications. The stored *B. longum* LMG 13197 cultures was allowed to thaw and 1 ml was subcultured into three 250 ml flasks containing 100 ml MRS-cys-HCl broth, and incubated anaerobically at 37°C for 48 h. After incubation, bacteria were harvested by centrifugation, using an Eppendorf centrifuge 5804R (cooled to 4°C) at 20 800 g for 15 min. The pelleted cells weighed 0.78 g (approximately 4.8×10^9 cfu/ml) and were washed once with Ringer's solution and kept at 4°C for 5 min before encapsulation. The first emulsion was prepared by suspending the bacterial pellet into 1 ml of 2% (w/v) inulin. The bacteria-inulin mixture was then added to 1 ml of 2% (w/v) poly-vinyl-alcohol (PVA). The resulting suspension was subsequently added to 10 ml dichloromethane (DCM) containing Vegetal BM 297 ATO at a final concentration of 10% (w/v). The resulting emulsion was homogenized at 8000 rpm for 5 min using a Silverson, L4R, NIMR homogenizer and left to stand at 25°C. The second emulsion was prepared by mixing 15 ml of PVA 2% (w/v) and 5 ml of lactose 5% (w/v). The first emulsion was mixed into the second emulsion and homogenised at 8000 rpm for 5 min using a Silverson, L4R, NIMR homogenizer. The stable emulsion was left to stand in the fume hood for 5 h for DCM evaporation. After evaporation of DCM, the sample was frozen at - 20°C overnight. This was followed by freeze drying using a Virtis bench top, SLC, freeze dryer for 3 days at -75°C. The freeze dryer was set at a condenser temperature and vacuum pressure of – 60°C and 0.26 millitor, respectively.

The same protocol was used to prepare Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles encapsulating *B. longum* LMG 13197 without inulin, except bacterial pellet was re-suspended in 1 ml of deionised water before mixing with 1 ml of 2% (w/v) poly-vinyl-alcohol (PVA). The control sample (unencapsulated cells) was prepared by resuspending B. *longum* LMG 13197 cells (approximately 4.8×10^9 cfu/ml) into 25 ml of sterile deionised water and fast-frozen in liquid nitrogen for 5 min. The fast-frozen cells were then frozen at – 70ºC for 1 h before freeze drying in a Virtis bench top, SLC, freeze dryer for 3 days at -75°C. After freeze drying, all

© University of Pretoria

the samples were stored in tightly sealed sterile Schott bottles at 4°C for 1 h until further analysis.

3.3.4 Determination of total bacteria encapsulated

Encapsulated bacteria (0.1 g) was suspended in 900 µl of DCM and vortexed for 30 s. Mixture was spun down using a MiniSpin, Eppendorf at 12 100 g for 30 s and the supernatant discarded. The pellet was then re-suspended in 900 µl of ¼ strength Ringer's solution. A tenfold serial dilution was performed and 100 µl of each dilution was plated out in triplicate onto MRS-cys-HCl agar using the pour plate method. The plates were incubated at 37°C for 72 h in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strip to indicate anaerobic conditions.

3.3.5 Preparation of simulated gastrointestinal fluids

SGF was prepared according to Lian et al. (2003). Briefly, pepsin (P7000, 1: 10000, ICN) (3 g/L) was suspended in sterile NaCl solution (0.5% w/v). The pH of the solution was adjusted to pH 2.0 with 12 M HCl, then filter sterilized through a 0.45 µm filter membrane (Millipore). SIF was prepared by dissolving 6.8 g of monobasic potassium phosphate (Sigma, St. Louis, MO, USA) in 250 ml of distilled water. This was followed by addition of 77 ml of 0.2 M NaOH and 500 ml of distilled water. The solution was vortexed for 30 min and then 10 g of pancreatin (P-1500, Sigma, St. Louis, MO, USA) was added and mixed. The solution was adjusted to pH 6.8 with 0.2 M NaOH or 0.2 M HCl. The total volume of the solution was made up to 1000 ml, followed by filter sterilization through a 0.45 µm filter membrane (Millipore). The simulated gastrointestinal fluids were freshly prepared for each experiment.

3.3.5.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in simulated gastric fluid (SGF)

One gram of unencapsulated and encapsulated bacteria samples were dispensed into separate test tubes containing 9 ml of SGF (pH 2.0). The tubes were vortexed for 30 s and incubated in a shaker incubator (Lasec, LM-575R) at 37°C for 2 h (Sun and Griffiths, 2000). One millilitre subsamples were withdrawn from the tubes at intervals 0, 30, 60 and 120 min from tubes containing the unencapsulated cells after vortexing and from tubes containing the

© University of Pretoria

encapsulated samples after gentle pipetting. Bacteria in the subsamples were then enumerated using viable plate count (VPC) and fluorochrome microplate assay (FMA) according to the method described by Alakomi et al. (2005).

3.3.5.2 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in simulated intestinal fluid (SIF)

After taking the 2 h subsamples for bacterial enumeration from SGF survival tests, the remaining suspensions of both the unencapsulated and encapsulated samples were pelleted by centrifugation using a Labnet Prism^{TM} Microcenrifuge at 7267 g for 5 min. The pellets were resuspended in 9 ml of SIF (pH 6.8). Tubes were incubated in a shaker incubator (Lasec, LM-575R) at 37°C for 6 h. One millilitre subsamples were taken at intervals 0, 2, 4 and 6 h (Picot and Lacroix, 2004) after mixing for bacterial enumeration using VPC and FMA.

3.3.5.3 Survival of encapsulated B. *longum* during storage

Duplicate samples of 1 g each for unencapsulated and encapsulated bacteria with or without inulin were weighed out and stored in glass vials at 4°C and 25°C for 6 weeks. Subsamples (0.1 g) were taken once a week and analysed for bacterial viability using flow cytometry assay (FCA), FMA and VPC.

3.3.6 Enumeration of cells

3.3.6.1 After exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids

The subsamples obtained after survival in SGF and SIF were serially diluted in ¼ strength Ringer's solution. Then 100 µl of each dilution was pour plated onto MRS agar supplemented with 0.05% cys-HCl in triplicates. Plates were incubated at 37°C for 72 h anaerobically in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strips.

© University of Pretoria

3.3.6.2 After storage

The encapsulated subsamples (0.1 g) obtained were suspended in 900 µl of DCM and vortexed for 30 s to release the bacterial cells from the encapsulating matrix. The mixture was spun down using a MiniSpin Eppendorf at 12 100 g for 30 s and the supernatant discarded. The pellet was then re-suspended in 900 µl of ¼ strength Ringer's solution. Unencapsulated subsamples (0.1 g) were suspended in 900 µl of ¼ strength Ringer's solution. A tenfold serial dilution was performed for all the samples and 100 µl of each dilution was plated out in triplicate onto MRS-cys-HCl agar plates using the pour plate method. The plates were incubated at 37°C for 72 h in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strip to indicate anaerobic conditions.

3.3.7 Fluorochrome microplate assay

3.3.7.1 Preparation of standard curve

The standard curve preparation was set up as follows: One hundred microlitres of *B. longum* LMG 13197 was inoculated into 25 ml of MRS broth supplemented with 0.05 % cysteine hydrochloride, and then incubated in a shaker incubator at 37°C in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strips for 72 h. Bacteria from this culture were harvested by centrifugation using the Eppendorf centrifuge 5804R (cooled to 4°C) at 20 800 g for 15 min. The pellet obtained was re-suspended in 2 ml of 0.85 % NaCl in a Falcon tube. One milliliter of the suspension was mixed with 20 ml of 0.85 % NaCl in two separate Falcon tubes labeled live and dead. Sample labeled dead was heat treated in a microwave for 2 min to kill the bacteria. Both live and dead bacteria samples were centrifuged using the Eppendorf centrifuge 5804R (cooled to 4°C) at 20 800 g for 15 min to pellet the cells. Pellets were re-suspended in 10 ml of 0.85 % NaCl. The cultures were adjusted to optical density at 600 nm (OD_{600}) of ~0.4 using a Spectronic® 20 Genesys™ spectrophotometer. Different volumes of live and dead bacteria (Table 3.1) were mixed to achieve different proportions of live: dead cells for determining a standard curve. Viable bacterial counts were determined for each bacterial mixture and used to correlate the green-to-red ratio obtained after staining. These values were used to plot the standard curve.

© University of Pretoria

Table 3.1: Proportions of live:dead cells used to calculate standard curve.

Ratio of live : dead cells	Live cell suspensions (ml)	Dead cell suspensions (ml)
0:100	0	2.0
10:90	0.2	1.8
50:50	1.0	1.0
90:10	1.8	0.2
100:0	2.0	0

3.3.7.2 Staining of bacterial suspensions and fluorochrome microplate assay

The staining of bacteria cultures was performed using a LIVE/DEAD ® Baclight ™ bacterial viability kit. The bacterial viability kit utilizes PI (red fluorescence at 620 nm) and SYTO9 (green fluorescence at 530 nm). The staining solution was prepared according to the manufacturer's instructions to obtain 3.34 mM of SYTO9 and 20 mM of PI stock solutions dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide. From these concentrations, a 2x staining solution was made by mixing 6 µl of PI and 6 µl of SYTO9 in 2.0 ml of filter sterilized water. Bacteria suspensions were then stained by mixing 100 µl of the bacterial suspension (approximately 1×10^9 cfu/ml) with 100 µl of the 2x staining solution in triplicates into a black 96 well fluorescence microtitre plate, as previously described (Alakomi et al., 2005). The microtitre plates were covered with foil and incubated in the dark for 15 min at room temperature. Fluorescence of bacterial suspensions was measured using the automated Fluorometer Fluoroskan Ascent FL (lab systems, Helsinki, Finland). The excitation and emission of red fluorescence were 530 nm and 635 nm respectively, while those of green fluorescence were 485 nm and 538 nm respectively. The intensities of the green-to-red ratio was used to compute the colony forming unit in each sample based on the standard curve previously prepared for *B. longum* LMG 13197 (Fig 3.1).

© University of Pretoria

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

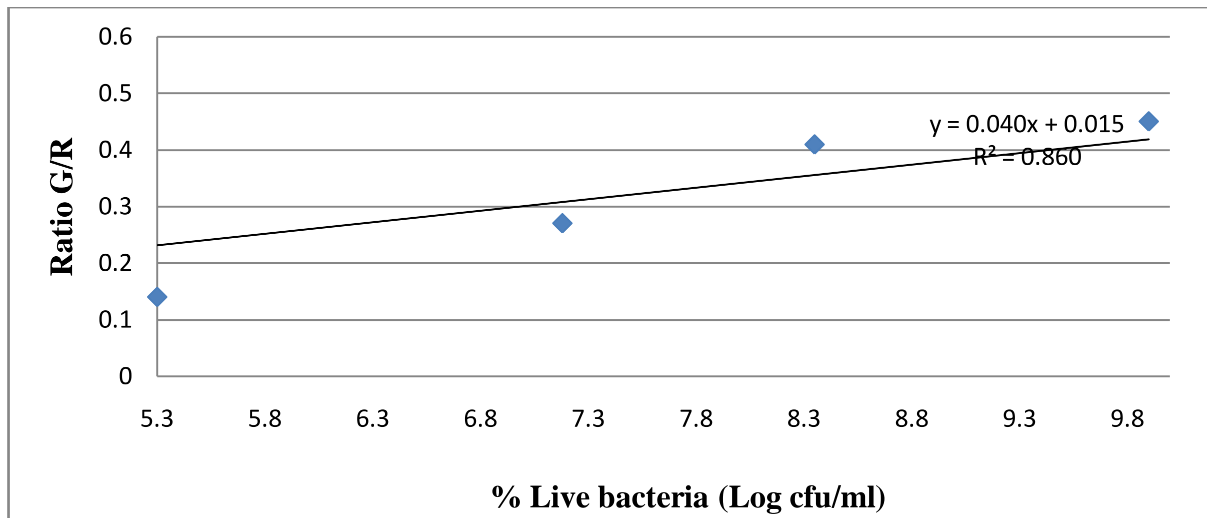


Fig 3.1 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and green/red fluorescence ratio (Ratio $_{G/R}$).

3.3.7.3 Fluorochrome microplate assay of B. *longum* LMG 13197 cells after exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids and storage

One millilitre bacterial samples obtained after survival in SGF and SIF were transferred to Eppendorf tubes and centrifuged at 12 100 g for 2 min. The pellets were then re-suspended in 0.85 % NaCl (Alakomi et al., 2005). The bacterial suspensions were adjusted to optical density at 600 nm (OD_{600}) of ~0.4 using a Spectronic® 20 Genesys™ spectrophotometer. Staining was performed by mixing 100 µl of the bacterial suspension with 100 µl of the 2x staining solution (6 µl of PI and 6 µl of SYTO9 in 2.0 ml of filter sterilized water) in triplicates into a black 96 well fluorescence microtitre plate. The microtitre plates were covered with foil and incubated in the dark for 15 min at room temperature. Fluorescence of bacterial suspensions was measured using the automated Fluorometer Fluoroskan Ascent FL (lab systems, Helsinki, Finland) as previously described.

The subsamples (0.1 g) obtained after survival during storage for unencapsulated cells were suspended in 900 µl of ¼ Ringer's solution and centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min to obtained pellets. The subsamples (0.1 g) obtained from the encapsulated cells were suspended in 900 µl of DCM and vortexed for 30 s to release the bacterial cells from the lipid matrix. This suspension was centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min and pellets were washed with ¼ Ringer's

© University of Pretoria

solution by further centrifugation at 12 100 g for 5 min. The pellets obtained from both unencapsulated and encapsulated samples were then re-suspended in 0.85 % NaCl. The bacterial suspensions were adjusted to optical density at 600 nm (OD_{600}) of ~0.2 using a Spectronic® 20 Genesys™ spectrophotometer. Staining was performed by mixing 100 µl of the bacterial suspension with 100 µl of the 2x staining solution (6 µl of PI and 6 µl of SYTO9 in 2.0 ml of filter sterilized water) in triplicates into a black 96 well fluorescence microtitre plate. The microtitre plates were covered with foil and incubated in the dark for 15 min at room temperature. Fluorescence of bacterial suspensions was measured using the automated Fluorometer Fluoroskan Ascent FL (lab systems, Helsinki, Finland) as previously described.

3.3.8 Flow cytometry assay

3.3.8.1 Preparation of standard curve

One hundred microlitres of *B. longum* LMG 13197 was grown in 25 ml of MRS broth supplemented with 0.05 % cysteine hydrochloride and incubated in a shaker incubator at 37°C under anaerobic conditions for 72 h. Twenty five milliliter of this culture was harvested by centrifugation at 20 800 g for 15 min. The pellet obtained was re-suspended in 2 ml of phosphate buffered saline (PBS) in a Falcon tube. One milliliter of the suspension was mixed with 20 ml of PBS in two separate Falcon tubes labeled live and dead. Sample labeled dead was heat treated in a microwave for 2 min to kill the bacteria. Both live and dead samples were centrifuged at 20 800 g for 15 min to pellet the bacterial cells. The resulting pellets were re-suspended in 10 ml of PBS and the OD_{600} adjusted to ~0.4 using a spectrophotometer (Spectronic® 20 Genesys™). Different volumes of live and dead bacteria were mixed and used to determine the standard curve as indicated in Table 3.1. Viable counts was determined for each bacterial suspension and used to correlate the percentage of live bacteria obtained from flow cytometry to plot the standard curve (Fig 3.2).

© University of Pretoria

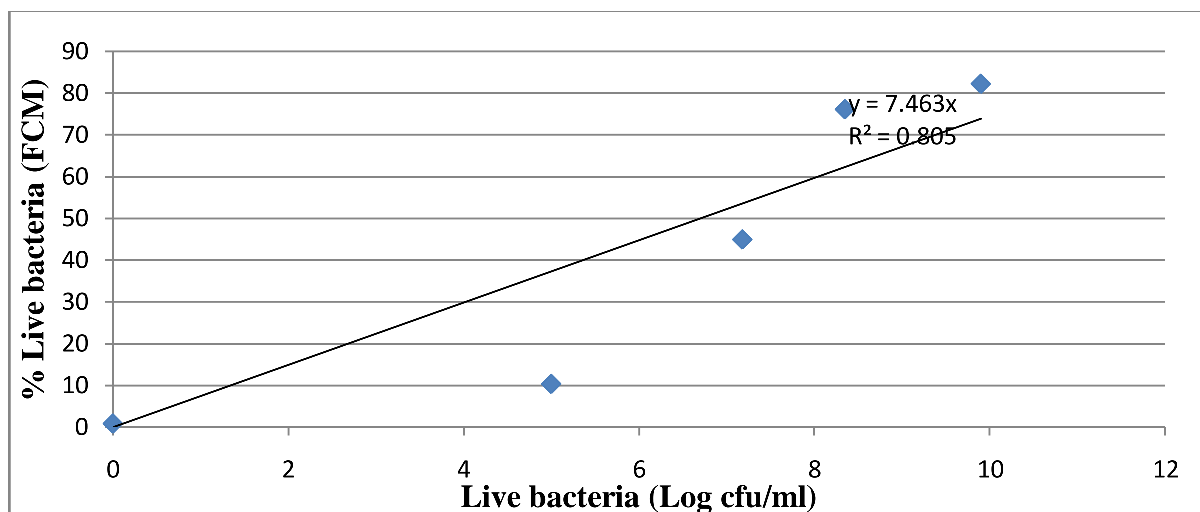


Fig 3.2 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and measured FCM live cells.

3.3.8.2 Staining of bacterial suspensions and flow cytometry assay

Staining of bacteria cultures was performed in triplicates using Live/Dead BacLight bacterial viability kit L7012 (Molecular Probes). Hundred microlitres of the bacterial suspension (approximately 10^9 cfu/ml) was mixed with 100 µl of staining mix (1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 1 ml of filter sterilized water) into eppendorf tubes. The tubes were covered with foil and incubated in a dark cupboard for 15 min. After incubation, the samples were transferred to a glass cuvette for analysis using a flow cytometer (FAC-Scan flow cytometer, Becton-Dickinson, Le Pont de Claix, France). The FAC-Scan analyzes cells passing through the sheath fluid using five band filters which include forward angle light scatter (FSC), side angle light scatter (SSC) and 3 fluorescence signals. These signals recognise fluorescent colours at different wavelengths and they include 530 nm {collects green fluorescence of SYT09, 30 nm band width, band pass filters ranging from 675- 715 nm (FITC)}, 585 nm {collects yellow-orange fluorescence} and 695 nm {collects red fluorescence of PI, 40nm band width, band pass filters ranging from 515-545nm (Per-C-P)}. FACSDIVA Version 6.1.3 was used to perform data analysis and the spectral overlap between the fluorescences emitted by both stains was removed by adjusting the compensation values and voltage threshold.

© University of Pretoria

3.3.8.3 Preparation of control samples

One hundred microliters of *B. longum* LMG 13197 was grown in two flasks containing 25 ml of MRS broth supplemented with 0.05 % cysteine hydrochloride and incubated in a shaker incubator at 37°C under anaerobic conditions for 72 h. After incubation, the flasks containing bacteria cultures were labelled live and dead. Sample labeled dead was heat treated in a microwave for 2 min to kill the bacteria. One millilitre subsample of the live sample was transferred into two Eppendorf tubes and labelled live and unstained respectively, while 1 ml subsample of the dead sample was transferred into an Eppendorf tube and labelled dead. These samples represented the controls used to differentiate the various bacterial populations into quadrants and to calculate the compensation of spectral overlap of different fluorochromes. The eppendorf tubes containing live, dead and unstained samples were centrifuged at 20 800 g for 15 min to pellet the bacterial cells. The resulting pellets were re-suspended in 1 ml of PBS and the OD_{600} adjusted to ~0.4 using a spectrophotometer (Spectronic® 20 Genesys™). The staining of bacteria cultures was performed in triplicates using Live/Dead BacLight bacterial viability kit L7012 (Molecular Probes). The Eppendorf tubes containing live and dead bacterial cells were stained separately with 1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 100 µl of mixed stains (1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 1 ml of filter sterilized water). After staining the cells, the tubes were covered with foil and kept in a dark cupboard for 15 min before performing flow cytometry analysis as described in section 3.3.8.2.

3.3.8.4 Flow cytometry assay of cells after storage

The subsamples (0.1 g) obtained after storage for unencapsulated cells were suspended in 900 µl of ¼ Ringer's solution and cells were pelleted by centrifugation at 12 100 g for 5 min. Subsamples (0.1 g) of encapsulated cells were suspended in 900 µl of DCM and vortexed for 30 s to release the bacterial cells from the encapsulating matrix. This suspension was centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min and pellets were washed with ¼ Ringer's solution by further centrifugation at 12 100 g for 5 min. Pellets obtained from unencapsulated and encapsulated samples were then re-suspended in 1 ml of PBS. The bacterial suspensions were adjusted to optical density at 600 nm (OD_{600}) of ~0.4 using a Spectronic® 20 Genesys™ spectrophotometer. Dual staining was performed in triplicates with Live/Dead BacLight

© University of Pretoria

bacterial viability kit L7012 (Molecular Probes), where the bacterial suspensions were stained with 100 µl of (1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 1 ml of filter sterilized water). After staining the cells, the tubes were covered with foil and incubated in a dark cupboard for 15 min before flow cytometry analysis as previously described.

3.3.9 Statistical analysis

Mean values and standard deviations were calculated from the data obtained from three independent trials. Data was analysed using one way ANOVA (analysis of variance) and a p-value less than 0.05 was considered to be statistically significant. Analysis was performed using JMP Statistical discovery software.

3.4 Results and Discussions

3.4.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in simulated gastrointestinal fluids

Unencapsulated and encapsulated bacteria were exposed to simulated gastric fluids (pH 2) for 2 hours and subsequently to intestinal fluids (pH 6.8) for 6 hours. The results obtained are shown in Figure 3.3. During exposure of unencapsulated bacteria to SGF, results showed a continuous decrease in the number of viable cells from an initial count of 8.60 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml to a final count of 6.26 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (2.34 log decrease) and from 8.92 to 7.50 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (1.42 log decrease) after 2 h for VPC and FMA respectively (Fig 3.3). Similar results have been reported following exposure of unencapsulated bacterial cells to SGF by researchers elsewhere. Hansen et al. (2002), showed a 3 to 4 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml decrease in *B. longum* Bb-46 after 2 h while De Castro-Cislaghi et al. (2012) reported a 1.51 log decrease in unencapsulated *B. lactis* Bb-12 at pH 2.

The exposure of Vegetal encapsulated bacteria to SGF led to an initial decrease of viable counts from 7.16 to 6.95 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml and from 7.30 to 7.10 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml in the first 30 min as indicated by VPC and FMA respectively (Fig 3.3). This initial drop may be due to the immediate release of cells that were not enclosed deep within the matrix. This was followed by an increase in the number of cells to 7.30 and 7.88 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml for VPC and FMA respectively after 2 h (Fig 3.3). This suggests that the matrix disintegrated in the low pH and

© University of Pretoria

released some of the encapsulated cells. Similarly, Vegetal-inulin encapsulated bacteria showed a gradual decrease from an initial of 5.93 to 5.87 log_{10} cfu/ml and from 6.00 to 5.96 log_{10} cfu/ml within the first 30 min of exposure to SGF for VPC and FMA respectively (Fig 3.3). This was followed by an increase in cells to 6.43 and 6.7 log_{10} cfu/ml as per VPC and FMA respectively after 2 h (Fig 3.3). After exposure to SGF, results showed that encapsulation protected the cells as opposed to the unencapsulated cells. The number of cells released from Vegetal matrix after exposure to SGF were 0.90 and 0.78 log units as per VPC and FMA respectively, while the number of cells released from Vegetal-inulin matrix during same time frame were 0.60 and 0.75 log units by VPC and FMA respectively (Fig 3.3). This suggests that addition of inulin improved the effectiveness of Vegetal to protect bifidobacteria during exposure to SGF, thus encapsulation with Vegetal-inulin performed better at protecting the cells from gastric acidity.

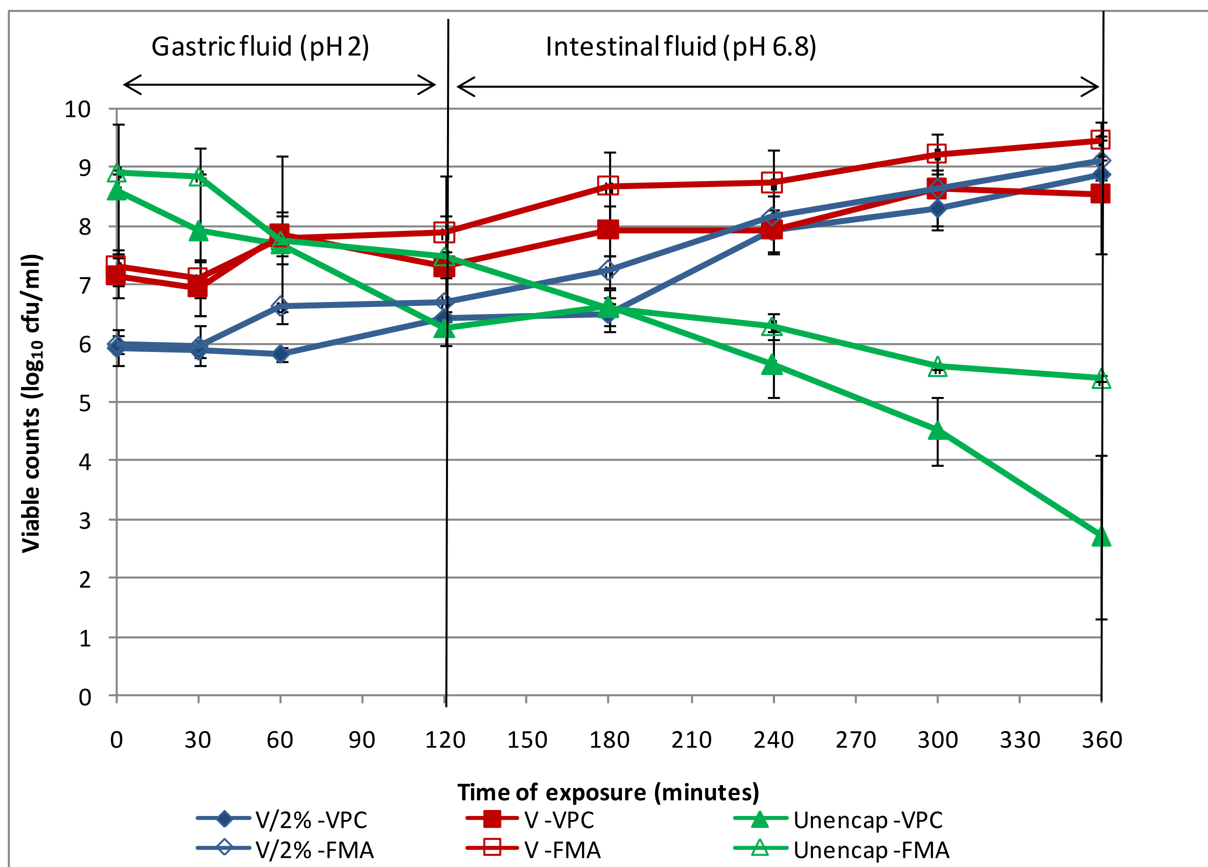


Figure 3.3 Survival of Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin encapsulated and unencapsulated *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 after exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids over 8 h. VPC= Viable plate count, FMA = fluorochrome microplate assay V= Vegetal, V/2% = Vegetal/ 2% inulin, Unencap = unencapsulated. Error bars represent standard deviation of means (n= 3).

© University of Pretoria

The numbers of the unencapsulated bacteria continued to decrease upon subsequent exposure to SIF (Fig 3.3). This resulted in a total bacterial cell loss of 5.89 and 3.52 log units as indicated by VPC and FMA respectively, after 8 h (Fig 3.3). Thantsha et al. (2009) also reported a continuous decrease in number of viable unencapsulated *B. longum* Bb-46. On the other hand, subsequent exposure of Vegetal encapsulated bacteria to SIF led to an increase in the number of viable bacteria, from an initial of 7.30 to 8.54 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml and from 7.88 to 9.46 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml at the end of 8 h for VPC and FMA respectively (Fig 3.3). This result suggests that at the high pH (6.8), the matrix dissolved and released cells into the fluid. Similarly, subsequent exposure of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated bacteria to SIF resulted in an increase in the number of viable bacteria cells, from an initial of 6.43 to 8.89 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml and from 6.71 to 9.13 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml after 8h as per VPC and FMA respectively (Fig 3.3). In support of our findings, Okuro et al. (2013) demonstrated that lipid microcapsules with prebiotics were disintegrated at pH 6.5 leading to the release of encapsulated bacteria.

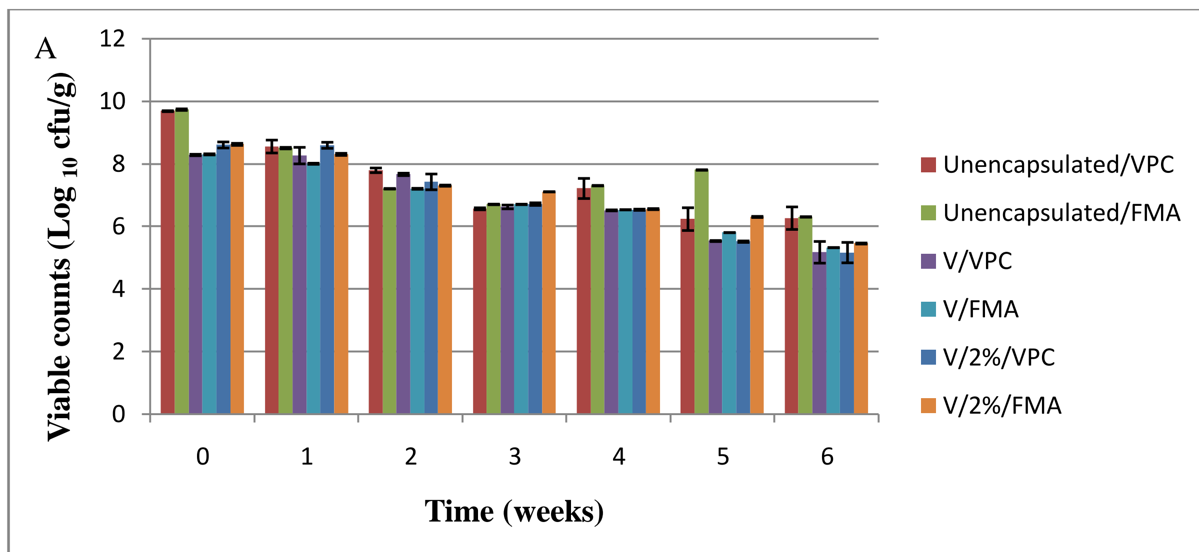
Our results showed that between the two matrices, a high burst release of cells was observed immediately after suspension in SIF from Vegetal matrix (Fig 3.3). Burst releases of cells from Vegetal matrix were 0.62 and 0.79 log units as per VPC and FMA, respectively. The release from Vegetal-inulin matrix was lower, counted at 0.07 and 0.52 log units as per VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 3.3). Although initial burst leads to higher cell delivery, it is not favourable as it can affect the ability of the matrix to maintain long term controlled release of cells (Huang and Brazel, 2001). Together, our results demonstrate that at the end of 8 h exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids, encapsulation provided significant protection to bifidobacteria cells as opposed the unencapsulated cells (Fig 3.3). Both Vegetal and Vegetal-inulin matrices showed continuous release of cells above 10^6 log cfu/ml in SIF, with no significant difference at the end of 8 h (Fig 3.3). Therefore, our results suggest that Vegetal-inulin matrix has the potential to release higher numbers of viable cells during gastrointestinal transit.

© University of Pretoria

3.4.2 Survival of encapsulated bacteria during storage

The results demonstrated that the number of unencapsulated bacteria was higher than the encapsulated bacteria when stored at 4ºC (Fig 3.4A). After 6 weeks of storage at 4ºC, the unencapsulated cells decreased from an initial count of 9.68 to 6.26 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g and from 9.73 to 6.3 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g as indicated by VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 3.4A). Despite this decrease, unencapsulated cells were still present in sufficient amounts at the end of the 6 weeks. On the other hand, Vegetal encapsulated cells showed a decrease in cells from an initial of 8.28 to 5.17 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g and from 8.30 to 5.32 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g after 6 weeks of storage at 4ºC as per VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 3.4A). Similarly, Vegetal-inulin encapsulated cells showed a decrease in cells from an initial of 8.60 to 5.16 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g and from 8.62 to 5.45 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g after 6 weeks of storage at 4ºC, indicated by VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 3.4 A). These reductions in viable cells might suggest partial release of bacteria from the matrix. The results of this study were different from those of Fritzen-Freire et al. (2012), who reported that *B. lactis* BB-12 cells encapsulated with and without inulin remained high for 12 weeks. The reason for this discrepancy could be due to the fact that *B. lactis* has been known to survive extreme conditions than other *Bifidobacterium* strains (Ruiz et al., 2011). When compared to the unencapsulated cells, our results demonstrate that encapsulation did not offer any extension in shelf life of bifidobacteria cells at 4°C, as protection was only provided for 4 weeks (Fig 3.4 A). When compared to the Vegetal encapsulated cells, FMA showed that Vegetal-inulin matrix contained viable cells above 6 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g by the 5th week of storage (Fig 3.4 A).

© University of Pretoria



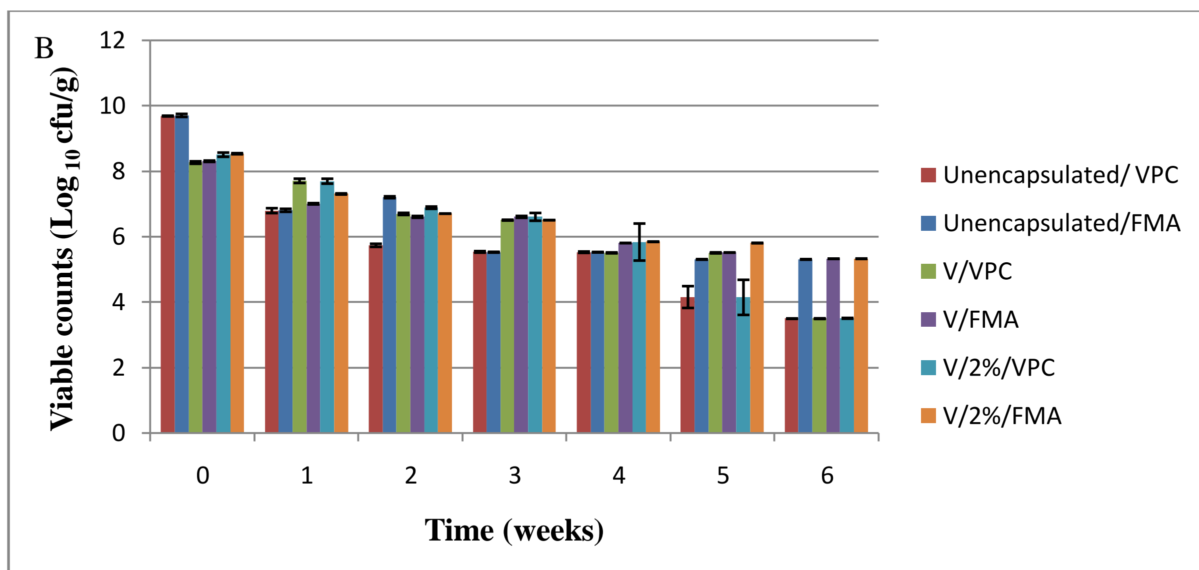


Figure 3.4 Survival of unencapsulated and encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 during storage at (A) 4°C and (B) 25°C for 6 weeks. V/2% = Vegetal+2% inulin; V= Vegetal; VPC= viable plate count; FMA= fluorochrome microplate assay. Each bar represents the mean of triplicate data from three independent trials; error bars represent standard deviations.

Figure 3.4 B shows survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during 6 weeks of storage at 25°C. Samples stored at 25°C showed a rapid decrease in viability for unencapsulated cells than for the encapsulated bacteria (Fig 3.4B). Viable counts of unencapsulated cells decreased from initials of 9.68 to 3.49 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g and from 9.70 to 5.30 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g after 6 weeks of storage at 25°C for VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 3.4B). These results demonstrate that numbers of viable unencapsulated bacteria stored at 25ºC dropped below the minimum amount of 10^6

© University of Pretoria

cfu/g after only 2 weeks (Fig 3.4B). On the other hand, Vegetal encapsulated bacteria showed a decrease in viable cells from initials of 8.26 to 3.49 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g and from 8.30 to 5.32 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g after 6 weeks of storage at 25ºC for VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 3.4B). Similarly, Vegetal-inulin encapsulated bacteria showed a decrease in cells from initials of 8.50 to 3.50 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g and from 8.53 to 5.32 $\log_{10}$ cfu/g after 6 weeks of storage at 25ºC for VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 3.4B). Our results demonstrated that the number of viable encapsulated bacteria (with and without inulin) dropped below 10^6 cfu/g after 3 weeks (Fig 3.4B). By the end of 6 weeks, VPC showed that counts of unencapsulated bacteria had decreased by 6.19 log units, while the encapsulated bacteria decreased by 4.77 and 5.00 log units for Vegetal and Vegetal-inulin matrices, respectively. When compared to the unencapsulated cells, our results demonstrate that encapsulation offered an increase in shelf life of bifidobacteria cells at 25ºC, with quality protection extended to 3 weeks (Fig 3.4 B), demonstrating an increase of shelf life by one week. There was no significant difference between the protections offered by either Vegetal or Vegetal-inulin matrix throughout storage period (Fig 3.4 B).

Oxygen toxicity has been reported as one of the main factors contributing to reduction in numbers of viable cells (Simpson et al., 2005). This can be attributed to an increase in lipid oxidation, which exposes the cells to deleterious oxygen levels (Simpson et al., 2005; Heidebach et al., 2010). To circumvent this problem, the use of vacuumed glass bottles as well as desiccators has been suggested as an alternative storage medium (Shah, 2000; Hsiao et al., 2004; Castro et al., 1995; Heidebach et al., 2010). Hsiao et al. (2004) reported better survival of *B. longum* Bb46 cells in glass bottles as compared to those in polyethylene terephthalate (PET) bottles, as glass bottles have less oxygen permeability. In this study, the encapsulated probiotics were not stored in a vacuum and the samples were continuously exposed to oxygen, during weekly sampling, suggesting that exposure to oxygen may have contributed to the loss in viability in glass bottles (Okuro et al., 2013). Other studies have reported on the increased survival of probiotics during storage using various encapsulation methods and matrices (Ann et al., 2007; Weinbreck et al., 2010; Okuro et al., 2013). Our results show that although an increase in cell loss was observed more at 25ºC, encapsulation using both Vegetal and Vegetal-inulin matrices improved survival of probiotics at 25ºC as opposed to the unencapsulated cells. On the other hand, encapsulation with Vegetal did not really increase shelf life of bacteria when compared to the unencapsulated cells at 4°C, but the addition of inulin offered better protection. This is the first study reporting the survival of

© University of Pretoria

B. longum encapsulated in lyophilized Vegetal-inulin lipid based synbiotic microparticles at different storage conditions. Our results suggest that most favourable shelf-life will be achieved if *B. longum* LMG 13197 encapsulated in Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin are stored under refrigerated conditions.

3.4.2.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria during storage (flow cytometry)

Flow cytometry was used in combination with Live/Dead Baclight kit L7012 (Molecular Probes) to assess viability of unencapsulated and encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197. Viability was evaluated by quantifying the relative percentages of each subpopulation during storage at 4°C and 25°C for 6 weeks. Dot plots of green and red fluorescence were used to differentiate bacterial populations. Each population was represented in quadrants; Q_1-injured cells ($SYTO9^+$ PI^+); Q_2- live cells ($SYTO9^+$ PI^-); Q_3- unstained viable or lysed cells ($SYTO9^-$ PI^-); Q_4- dead cells (PI^+ $SYTO9^-$). Figure 3.5 shows the flow cytometric dot plots which represent controls used for compensation settings. These settings allowed for proper discrimination between live, damaged and dead cells by dual staining method. SYTO9 stains all the bacteria cells in a populations, whether dead or alive (Fig 3.5 B and D). PI stains only cells with damaged or compromised bacterial membrane (Fig 3.5 C and E). Dual staining of bacteria cells in a population shows how SYTO9 stains all the cells, but in the presence of PI, SYTO9 is displaced and stains only cells with compromised membranes (3.5 F) (Auty et al., 2001; Lahtinen et al., 2006).

© University of Pretoria

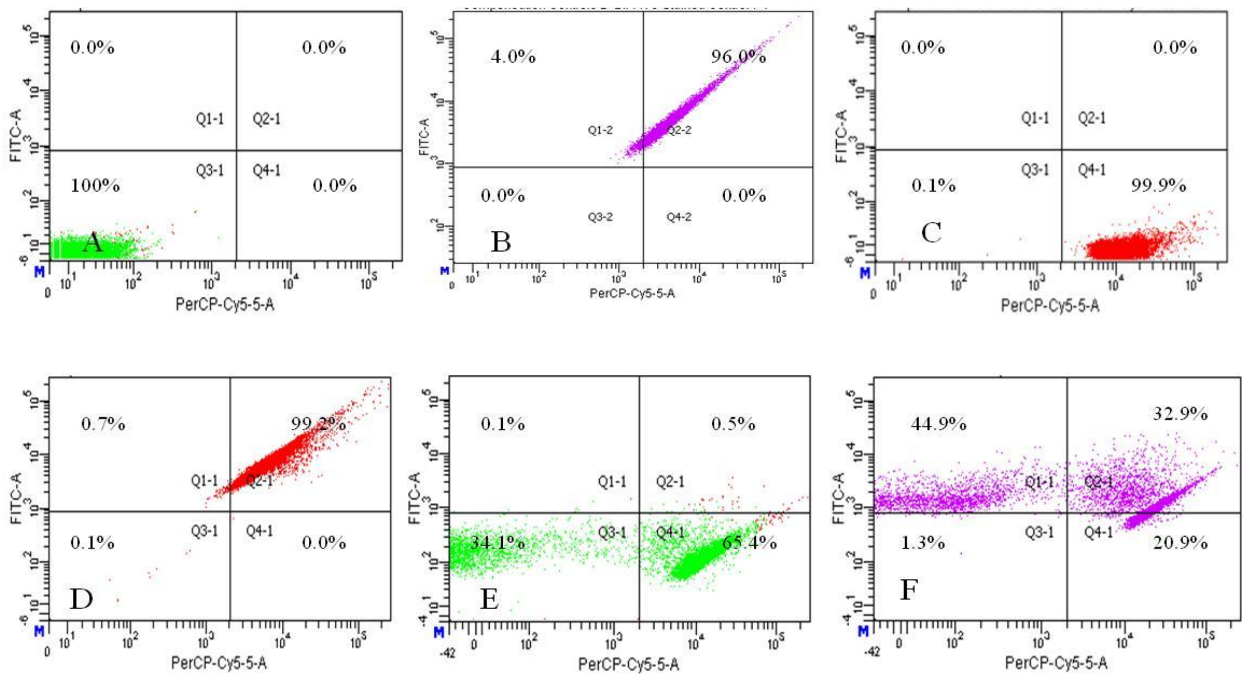


Fig 3.5 Dot plots showing setting of quadrants using *B. longum* LMG 13197 controls: A (Unstained cells), B (SYTO9 stained live cells), C (PI stained dead cells), D (SYT09 stained mixed cells), E (PI stained mixed cells) and F (Dual stained mixed cells).

The results demonstrated that the number of unencapsulated bacteria were high at initial stage of storage at 4ºC (Fig 3.6A). The number of live cells (Q_2) reduced from 63.8% to 14.5%, the injured cells (Q_1) increased from 34.0% to 59.7% and the dead cells increased from 1.9% to 7.4 % (Q_4) at 6th week of storage (Fig 3.6B). The increase in the number of injured cells suggests that over time, the cell membranes experienced an intermediate degree of damage which allowed the penetration of PI (Liu et al., 2007). However, this damage was not enough for them to be recorded as dead, as depicted by the low numbers of dead cells (Fig 3.6B). Light scatter pattern is indicative of bacteria size and granularity or complexity (Veal et al., 2000; Schenk et al., 2011). The results showed a diffuse scatter pattern for the unencapsulated bacteria throughout the storage period, suggesting that there were no significant changes to the size of the cells (Fig 3.6A and B). In correlation to the results obtained from VPC, FCA showed that the number of unencapsulated cells remained high by the 6th week of storage.

After 6 weeks of storage at 4°C, the population of Vegetal encapsulated bacteria showed a decrease of 7.2% for live cells, a decrease of 0.3% for injured cells and an increase of 19%

© University of Pretoria

for dead cells (Fig 3.6 C and D). In the same time frame, the population of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated bacteria showed a decrease of 1.8% for live cells and increases of 0.3% and 21.7% for injured and dead cells, respectively (Fig 3.6 E and F). The high bacterial numbers observed in the dead quadrants of encapsulated bacteria by the 6th week of storage at 4°C (Figs 3.6 C, D and 3.6 E, F), suggests damage to the bacterial membrane overtime, which is often associated with environmental stresses (Beal et al., 2001; Ananta et al., 2005; Cánovas et al., 2007; Rault et al., 2007; Martin-Dejardin et al., 2013). Previous studies have shown that freeze dried lactic acid bacteria exhibited more than 50% of dead cells after one month storage at -80°C (Rault et al., 2007). Light scatter pattern also demonstrated slightly dispersed bacteria patterns during the first week for both encapsulated samples (Fig 3.6 C and E). By the 6th week, the cell population light dispersion became more concentrated (Fig 3.6 D and F), indicating alterations in the size and internal structure of bacteria as reported by Hewitt et al., (1999). In correlation to the results obtained from VPC, FCA showed that the number of viable encapsulated cells decreased by the 6th week of storage, with a high percentage decrease in live cells for Vegetal encapsulated cells than Vegetal-inulin encapsulated cells.

The high percentage of unstained cells observed in Q_3 (Fig 3.6) could suggest that; 1) The stress associated with freeze drying reduced the ability of cells to take up SYTO9, 2) The bacterial membrane integrity was relatively high and PI could not penetrate across membrane and stain nucleic acids, 3) The presence of debris which are often seen in treated samples and 4) The presence of lysed bacteria that may have lost their nucleic acids and therefore cannot be stained (Hayouni et al., 2008; Martinez-Abad et al., 2012).

© University of Pretoria

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

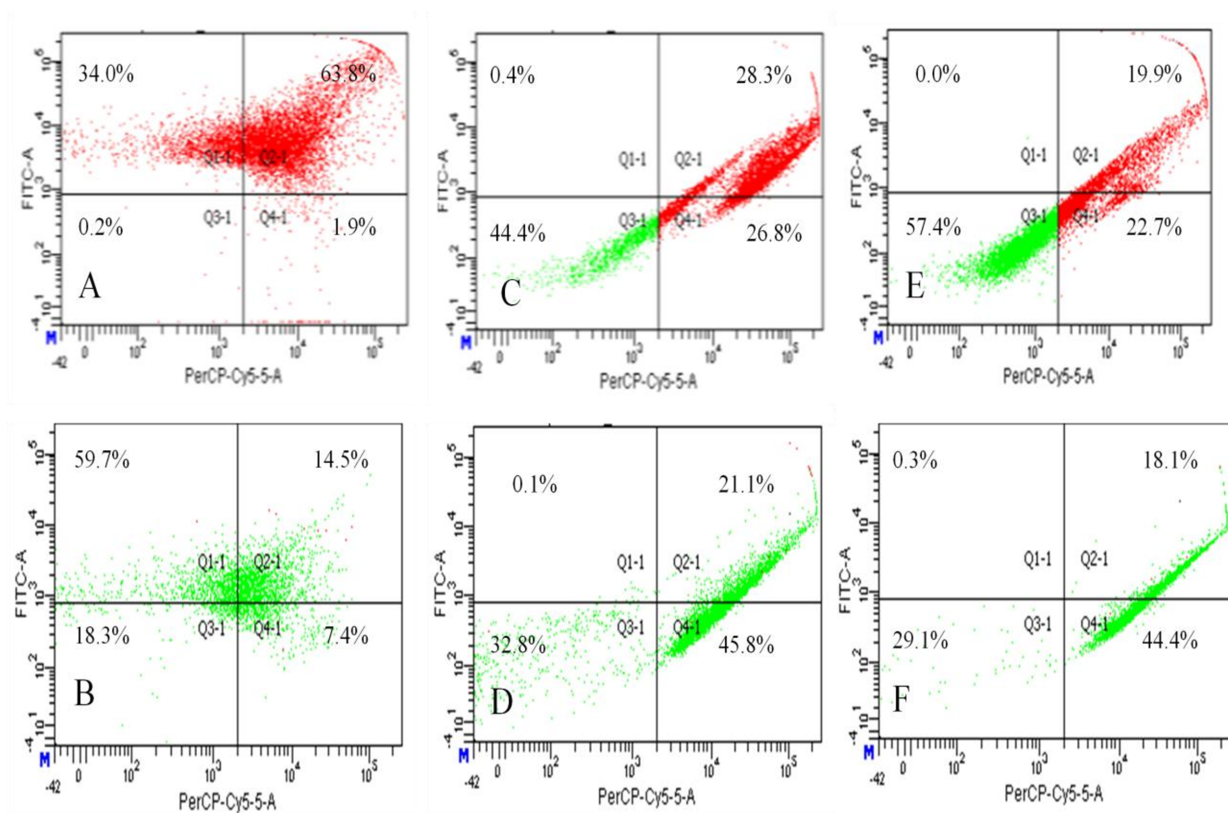


Fig 3.6 Dot plots showing the survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during storage at 4°C: unencapsulated at week 0 (A) and week 6 (B), Vegetal encapsulated at week 0 (C) and week 6 (D), Vegetal-inulin encapsulation at week 0 (E) and week 6 (F).

There was a drastic decline in the number of unencapsulated viable cells stored at 25°C after 6 weeks (Fig 3.7 A and B). Results showed a reduction of 51.6% and 31.2% for live and injured cells, respectively with a concomitant increase of 81.7% for dead cells after 6 weeks of storage at 25°C (Fig 3.7 A and B). By the 6th week, a decline in the number of Vegetal encapsulated viable cells stored at 25°C was also observed (Fig 3.7 C and D). For this sample, live cells decreased by 49.2%, while dead cells increased by 53% (Fig 3.7 C and D). Similarly, Vegetal-inulin encapsulated cells showed a 42.6% decline in the number of live cells and an increase of 46.8% for dead cells (Fig 3.7 E and F). Light scatter pattern demonstrated slightly dispersed bacterial populations during the first week (Fig 3.7 C and E) to more concentrated dispersion patterns six weeks post-storage (Fig 3.7 D and F) for both encapsulated samples. A concentrated bacterial dispersion pattern could suggest a decrease in bacterial size or alterations of cell morphology (Novik et al., 2001; Young et al., 2007; Schenk et al., 2011). In correlation to the results obtained from VPC, FCA clearly demonstrated a greater loss in bacterial viability at 25°C for all the samples analyzed, but the

© University of Pretoria

number of viable unencapsulated cells decreased more than the encapsulated cells by the 6th week of storage.

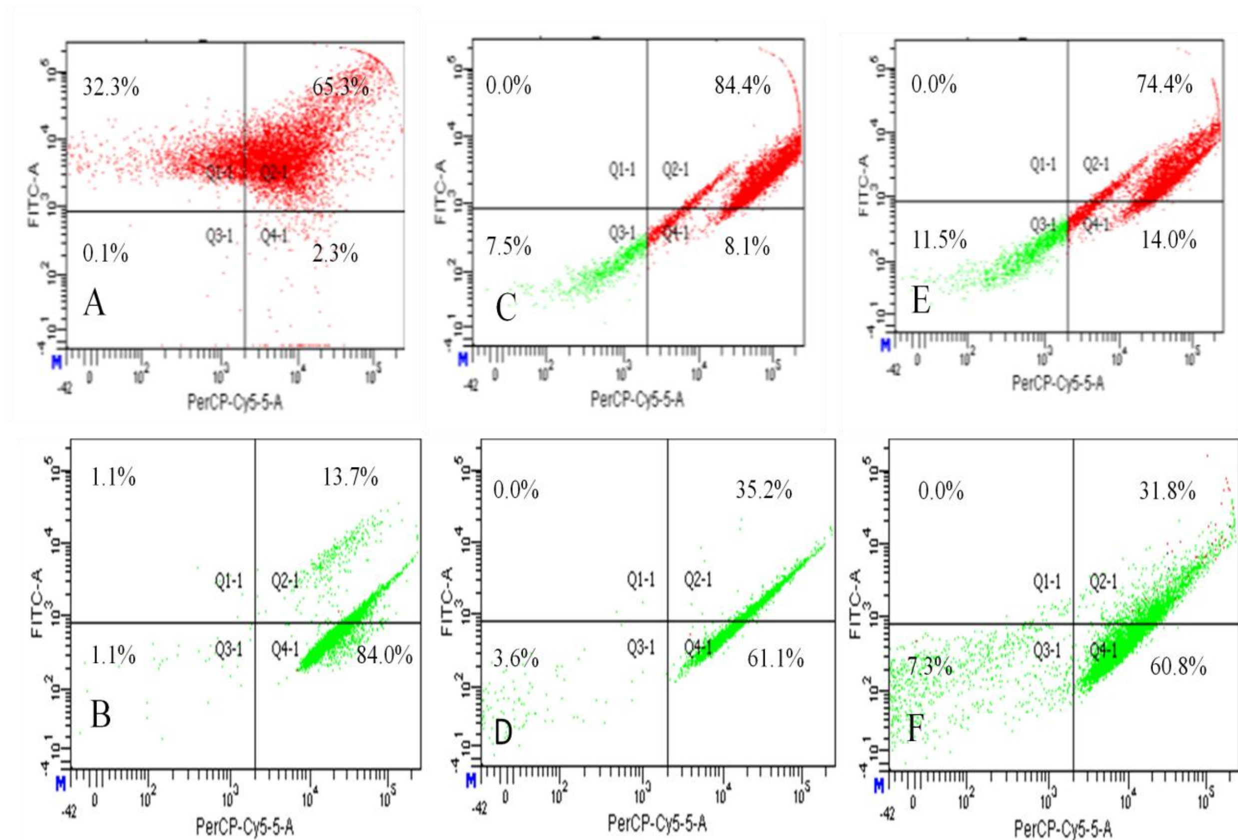


Fig 3.7 Dot plots showing the survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 during storage at 25°C: unencapsulated at week 0 (A) and week 6 (B), Vegetal encapsulated at week 0 (C) and week 6 (D), Vegetal-inulin encapsulation at week 0 (E) and week 6 (F).

In summary, our results demonstrate that encapsulation proved essential during storage at 25°C, as encapsulated cells showed better survival than the unencapsulated cells. However, all the samples showed increased loss in viable cells at 25°C more than at 4°C by the end of storage period. Although the unencapsulated cells survived throughout the storage period at 4°C, Vegetal-inulin matrix seemed to offer better protection with a 1.8% decrease in live cells as opposed to a 7.2% decrease for Vegetal encapsulated cells. Therefore, in correlation with results obtained from VPC and FMA, optimal shelf life will be achieved under refrigerated conditions.

© University of Pretoria

3.5 Conclusion

The production of freeze dried lipid microparticles using Vegetal for the encapsulation of probiotics, offered protection during exposure to simulated gastrointestinal fluids. The presence of inulin improved the protection efficiency of Vegetal, as *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells were protected from gastric juice acidity and then released in sufficient amounts in SIF for colonization. In comparison to the unencapsulated cells, encapsulation improved the survival of the probiotics during 6 weeks of storage at 25°C. Although encapsulation did not significantly improve survival of probiotics during 6 weeks of storage at 4°C, Vegetal-inulin matrix offered considerable protection until the fifth week. Therefore, Vegetal-inulin microparticles have the potential to be applied as food adjuncts to readily consumable foods.

3.6 References

Adhikari, K., Mustapha, A., Grün, I.U., Fernando, L., 2000. Viability of Microencapsulated bifidobacteria in set yoghurt during refrigerated storage. Journal of Dairy Science 83 (9), 1946-1951.

Akalin, A.S., Erisir, D., 2008. Effects of inulin and oligofructose on the rheological characteristics and probiotic culture survival in low fat probiotic ice cream. Journal of Food Science 73 (4), M184-M188.

Alakomi, H. L., Mättö, J., Virkajärvi, I., Saarela, M., 2005. Application of microplate scale fluorochrome staining assay for the assessment of viability of probiotic preparations. Journal of Microbiological Methods 62, 25-35.

Ananta, E., Volkert, M., Knorr, D., 2005. Cellular injuries and storage stability of spray-dried *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* GG. International Dairy Journal 15, 399-409.

Ann, E.Y., Kim, Y., Oh, S.J., Imm, J.Y., Park, D.J., Han, K.S., Kim, S.H., 2007. Microencapsulation of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* ATCC 43121 with prebiotic substrates using a hybridisation system. International Journal of Food Science and Technology 42, 411-419.

© University of Pretoria

Auty, M.A.E., Gardiner, G.E., Mcbrearty, S.J., Osullivan, E.O., Mulvihill, D.M., Collins, J.K., Fitzgerald, G.F., Stanton C., Ross, R.P., 2001. Direct in situ viability assessment of bacteria in probiotic dairy products using viability staining in conjunction with Confocal scanning laser microscopy. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 67, 420-425.

Beal, C., Fonseca, F., Corrieu, G., 2001. Resistance to freezing and storage of *Streptococcus thermophilus* is related to membrane fatty acid composition. Journal of Dairy Science 84, 2347-2356.

Brinques, G.B., Ayub, M.A.Z., 2011. Effects of microencapsulation on survival of *Lactobacillus plantarum* in simulated gastrointestinal conditions, refrigeration and yoghurt. Journal of Food Engineering 103, 123-128.

Bruno, F.A., Shah, N.P., 2003. Viability of two freeze dried strains of *Bifidobacterium* and of commercial preparations at various temperatures during prolonged storage. Journal of Food Science 68 (7), 2336-2339.

Cánovas, M., Garcia, V., Bernal, V., Torroglosa, T., Iborra, J.L., 2007.Analyiss of Escherichia coli cell state by flow cytometry during whole cell catalyzed biotransformation for L-carnitine production. Process Biochemistry 42, 25-33.

Capela, P., Hay, T.K.C., Shah, N.P., 2006. Effect of cryoprotectants, prebiotics and microencapsulation on the survival of probiotic organisms in yoghurt and freeze dried yoghurt. Food Research International 39, 203-211.

Castro, H.P., Teixeira, P.M., Kirby, R., 1995. Storage of lyophilised cultures of *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* under different relative humidities and atmospheres. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology 44 (1-2), 172-176.

Cheng, Q., Zhong, F., Wen, J., McGillivray, D., Quek, S.Y., 2013. Properties and stability of spray dried and freeze dried microcapsules co-encapsulated with fish oil, phytosterol esters and limonene. Drying Technology 31, 707-716.

© University of Pretoria

De Castro-Cislaghi, F.P., Carina Dos Reis, E.S., Fritzen-Freire, C.B., Lorenz, J.G., Sant'Anna, E.S., 2012. *Bifidobacterium Bb-12* microencapsulation by spray drying with whey: Survival under simulated gastrointestinal conditions, tolerance to NaCL, and viability during storage. Journal of Food Engineering 113, 186-193.

Dianawati, D., Mishra, V., Shah, N.P., 2013. Survival of *Bifidobacterium longum* 1941 microencapsulated with proteins and sugars after freezing and freeze drying. Food Research International 51, 503-509.

Fritzen-Freire, C.B., Prudencio, E.S., Amboni, R.D.M.C., Pinto, S.S., Negrão-Murakami, A.N., Murakami, F.S., 2012., Microencapsulation of bifidobacteria by spray drying in the presence of prebiotics. Food Research International 45, 306-312.

Guarner, F., Malagelada, J.R., 2003. Gut flora in health and disease. Review, the Lancet 361, 512-519.

Hansen, L.T., Allan-Wojtas, P.M., Jin, Y.L., Paulson, A.T., 2002. Survival of calcium-alginate microencapsulated *Bifidobacterium* spp in milk and in simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Food Microbiology 19, 35-45.

Hayouni, E.A., Bouix, M., Abedrabba, M., Leveau, J.Y., Hamdi, M., 2008. Mechanism of action of *Melaleuca armillaris* (Sol. Ex Gaertu) Sm. Essential oil on six LAB strains as assessed by multiparametric flow cytometry and automated microtiter- based assay. Food Chemistry 111, 707-718.

Heidebach, T., Först Petra., Kulozik, U., 2010. Influence of casein-based microencapsulation on freeze-drying and storage of probiotic cells. Journal of Food Engineering 98, 309-316.

Hewitt, C.J., Caron, G.N.V., Nienow, A.W., McFarlane, C.M., 1999. The use of multiparameter flow cytometry to compare the physiological response of *Escherichia coli* W3110 to glucose limitation during batch, fed-batch and continuous culture cultivations. Journal of Biotechnology 75, 251-264.

© University of Pretoria

Heydari, S., Mortazavian, A.M., Ehsani, M.R., Mohammadifar, M.A., Ezzatpanah, H., 2011. Biochemical, Microbiological and Sensory characteristics of probiotic yoghurt containing various prebiotic compounds. Italian Journal Food of Science 23, 153-163.

Hsiao, H.C., Lian, W.C., Chou, C.C., 2004. Effect of packaging conditions and temperature on viability of microencapsulated bifidobacteria during storage. Journal of Science of Food and Agricultural 84, 134-139.

Huang, X., Brazel, C.S., 2001. On the importance and mechanisms of burst release in matrix-controlled drug delivery systems. Journal of Controlled Release 73, 121-136.

Kramer, M., Obermajer, N., Matijasic, B.B., Rogelj, I., Kmetec, V., 2009. Quantification of live and dead probiotic bacteria in lyophilised product by real-time PCR and by flow cytometry. Applied Genetics and Molecular Biotechnology 84, 1137-1147.

Lahtinen, S.J., Gueimande, M., Ouwehand, A.C., Reinikainen, J.P., Salimen, S.J., 2006. Comparison of four methods to enumerate probiotic bifidobacteria in a fermented food product. Food Microbiology 23, 571-577.

Lian, W.C., Hsiao, H, C., Chou, C.C., 2002. Survival of bifidobacteria after spray drying. International Journal of Food Microbiology 74, 79-86.

Lian, W.C., Hsiao, H, C., Chou, C.C., 2002. Viability of encapsulated bifidobacteria in simulated gastric juice and bile solution. International Journal of Food Microbiology 2679, 1-9.

Lian, W.C., Hsiao, H, C., Chou, C.C., 2003. Viability of microencapsulated bacteria in simulated gastric juice and bile solution. International Journal of Food Microbiology 86, 293-301.

Liu, Li-fen., Barford, J., Yeung, King-Lun., Grace, S.I., 2007. Non-UV based germicidal activity of metal-doped TiO_2 coating on solid surfaces. Journal of Environmental Sciences 19, 745-750.

© University of Pretoria

Lourens-Hattingh, A., Viljoen, B. C., 2001. Review: Yoghurt as probiotic carrier food. International Dairy Journal 11, 1-17.

Martinez-Abad, A., Sánchez, G., Lagaron, J.M., Ocio, M.J., 2012. On the different growth conditions affecting silver antimicrobial efficacy on *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Salmonella enterica*. International Journal of Food Microbiology 158, 147-154.

Martin-Dejardin, F., Ebel, B., Lemetais, G., Nguyen, H., Gervais, P., Cachon, R., Chambin, O., 2013. A way to follow the viability of encapsulated *Bifidobacterium bifidum* subjected to a freeze-drying process in order to target the colon: interest of flow cytometry. European Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences 49 (2), 166-174.

Novik, G.I., Astapovich, N.I., Samartsev, A. A., 2001. Investigation of the physiological and biochemical characteristics of bifidobacteria at the late stages of their development. Microbiology 70(1), 429-435.

Okuro, P.K., Thomazini, M., Balieiro, J.C.C., Liberal, R.D.C.O., Fávaro-Trindade, C.S., 2013. Co-encapsulation of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* with inulin or polydextrose in solid lipid microparticles provides protection and improves stability. Food Research International 53, 96-103.

Özer, D., Akin, S., Özer, B., 2005. Effects of inulin and lactulose on the survival of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* LA-5 and *Bifidobacterium bifidum* BB-02 in acidophilus-bifidus yoghurt. Food Science and Technology International 11 (1), 019-026.

Piano, D.M., Morelli, L., Strozzi, G.P., Allesina, S., Barba, M., Deidda, F., Lorenzini, P., Ballaré, M., Montino, F., Orsello, M., Sartori, M., Garello, E., Carmagnola, S., Pagliarulo, M., Capurso, L., 2006. Probiotics: from research to consumer. Digestive and Liver Disease 38 (2), S248-S255.

Picot, A., Lacroix, C., 2004. Encapsulation of bifidobacteria in whey protein based microcapsules and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Dairy Journal 14, 505-515.

© University of Pretoria

Pimentel-González D.J., Campos-Montiel, R.G., Lobato-Calleros, C., Pedroza-Islas, R., Vernon-Carter, E.J., 2009. Encapsulation of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* in double emulsions formulated with sweet whey as emulsifier and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Food Research International 42, 292-297.

Pop, O.L., Brandau, T., Vodnar, D.C., Socaciu, C., 2012. Study of *Bifidobacterium lactis* 300b survival during encapsulation coating and freeze drying process and the release in alkaline media. Bulletin UASVM Agriculture 69 (2), 372-379.

Rault, A., Beal, C., Ghorbal, S., Jean-Claude, O., Bouix, M., 2007. Multiparametric flow cytometry allows rapid assessment and comparison of lactic acid bacteria viability after freezing and during frozen storage. Cryobiology 55, 35-43.

Reyed, M.R., 2007. The role of *Bifidobacterium* in health. Research Journal of Medicine and Medical Sciences 2(1), 14-24.

Ruiz, L., Madiedo, R.P., Gueimonde, M., de los Reyes-Gavilán, C.G., Margolles, A., Sánchez, B., 2011. How do bifidobacteria counteract environmental challenges / mechanisms involved and physiological consequences? Genes and Nutrition 6, 307-318.

Sanders, M.E., Veld, J., 1999. Bringing a probiotic containing functional food to the market: Microbiological product, regulations, labelling issues. Antoine Vanleeuwenhoek 76, 293-315.

Schenk, M., Raffellini, S., Guerrero, S., Guillermo, A.B., Alzamora, M., 2011. Inactiavtion of *Escherichia coli, Listeria innocua and Saccharomyces cerevisiae* by UV-C light: Study of cell injury by flow cytometry. Food Science and Technology 44, 191-198.

Shah, N.P., 2000. Probiotic Bacteria: Selective enumeration and survival in dairy foods. Journal Dairy Science 83, 894-907.

Simpson, P.J., Stanton, C., Fitzgerald, G.F., Ross, R.P., 2005. Intrinsic tolerance of *Bifidobacterium* species to heat and oxygen and survival following spray drying and storage. Journal of Applied Microbiology 99, 493-501.

© University of Pretoria

Song, D., Ibrahim, S., Hayek, S., 2012. Recent application of probiotics in food and agricultural science. INTECH Open Science. 1, 4-36.

Suita-Cruce, P., Goulet, J., 2001. Improving probiotic survival rates. Food Technology 55(10), 36-42.

Sun, W., Griffiths, M.W., 2000. Survival of *Bifidobacteria* in yoghurt and simulated gastric juice following immobilisation in gellan-xanthan beads. International Journal of Food Microbiology 61, 17-25.

Sultana, K., Godward, G., Reynolds, N., Arumugaswamy, R., Peiris, P., Kailasapathy, K., 2000. Encapsulation of probiotic bacteria with alginate-starch and evaluation of survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Journal of Food Microbiology 62, 47-55.

Thantsha, M.S., Cloete, T.E., Moolman, F.S., Labuschagne, W.P., 2009. Supercritical carbondioxide interpolymer complexes improve survival of *B. longum Bb-46* in simulated gastrointestinal fluids. International Journal of Food Microbiology 129, 88-92.

Vasiljevic, T., Shah N.P., 2008. Probiotics-from Metchnikoff to bioactives. International Dairy Journal 18, 714-728.

Veal, D.A., Deere, D., Ferrari, B., Piper, J., Atfield, P.V., 2000. Fluorescence staining and flow cytometry for monitoring microbial cells. Journal of immunological methods 243, 191-210.

Vinderola, C.G., Bailo, N., Reinheimer, J.A., 2000. Survival of probiotic microflora in Argentinean yoghurts during refrigerated storage. Food Research International 33, 97- 102.

Wang, Y.C., Yu, R.C., Chou, C.C., 2004. Viability of lactic acid bacteria and bifidobacteria in fermented soy milk after drying, subsequent rehydration and storage. International Journal of Food Microbiology 93, 209-217.

© University of Pretoria

Weinbreck, F., Bodnár, I., Marco, M.L., 2010. Can encapsulation lengthen the shelf-life of probiotic bacteria in dry products? International Journal of Food Microbiology 136, 364-367.

Young, K.D., 2007. Bacterial morphology: Why have different shapes? Current Opinion in Microbiology 10 (6), 596-600.

© University of Pretoria

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

CHAPTER 4

Survival of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt and its influence on the physico-chemical attributes of yoghurt

© University of Pretoria

4.1 Abstract

Maintaining the viability of probiotics in yoghurt has become very challenging due to post acidification, which occurs during refrigeration storage. Consumers can only obtain the health benefits from yoghurt if the incorporated probiotics remain above the recommended therapeutic standard prior to consumption. Microencapsulation is expected to improve the survival of probiotics during this post acidification period. This study aimed at analysing viability of *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 encapsulated with Vegetal BM 297 ATO (with or without inulin) in yoghurt during six weeks of refrigeration storage. The change in pH and colour of yoghurt samples was monitored throughout the storage period following the incorporation of the microparticles. The number of viable cells was analyzed weekly using plate count method, microplate fluorochrome assay and flow cytometry. Viability analysis showed that the levels of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 remained well above recommended therapeutic minimum (10^6 cfu/ml) at the end of the storage period, as opposed to the unencapsulated cells. The pH of yoghurt samples with Vegetal and Vegetal-inulin encapsulated probiotic showed no significant decrease ($p>0.05$), while yoghurt with unencapsulated cells decreased. There was a significant effect ($p<0.05$) on the lightness (L^*) and yellowness (b^*) of the yoghurt sample containing Vegetal-inulin encapsulated cells by the 6th week of storage and the total colour change was negligible. Therefore, Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin matrix protected *B. longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt throughout storage period, with no increase in pH or negative effect to the appearance of yoghurt.

Keywords: Probiotics, inulin, yoghurt, Vegetal BM 297 ATO, *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197, fluorochrome microplate assay, flow cytometry, microencapsulation.

© University of Pretoria

4.2 Introduction

One of the important developments in today's food industries is the production of functional foods and functional food supplements for health purposes (Saarela et al., 2002). In light of this, probiotics have been used to improve health of individuals (Venter, 2007; Fooks and Gibson, 2002; Iyer and Kailasapathy, 2005). Probiotics are defined as"live microorganisms which when taken in adequate amounts confer beneficial effects to the host" (FAO/WHO, 2002). The increasing need for improved health values led to incorporation of probiotics into fermented dairy products, such as yoghurt (Venter, 2007). Yoghurt is an acidic fermented dairy food, which is consumed worldwide and has become an important vehicle by which consumers can ingest probiotic cells (Sun and Griffiths, 2000). The acidic constituent of yoghurt is as a result of the presence of starter cultures (*Streptococcus salivarius subsp thermophilus* and *Lactobacillus delbrueckii subsp bulgaricus*) (Younus et al., 2002). The starter cultures bring about fermentation which gives yoghurt its unique taste, texture, colour and odour. However, these unique characteristics can be negatively affected if the metabolites produced by starter cultures are not limited, and can lead to rejection by the consumers and increased economic losses (Arai et al., 1996; Aswal et al., 2012). Therefore, the organoleptic and physico-chemical properties of yoghurt must be analysed to ensure that its quality remains acceptable to consumers (Gonzalez et al., 2011).

In addition, consumers have to be assured of continuous nutritional availability as well as an acceptable shelf life. Hence, it is essential to ensure that the probiotic cells remain viable and in sufficient amounts of 10^6-10^7cfu/ml or g in this probiotic product in order to provide the required health benefits (Lee and Salminen, 1995; Özer et al., 2005). These requirements are met by performing shelf life and survival studies of the probiotics present in yoghurt (Bunthof et al., 2001; Bunthof and Abee, 2002; Picot and Lacroix, 2004; Iyer and Kailasapathy, 2005; Lahtinen et al., 2006; Vasiljevic and Shah, 2008). Probiotic strains such as *Bifidobacterium lactis* and *B. longum* have been increasingly incorporated into yoghurt, because they have been reported to tolerate acidity (Sun and Griffiths, 2000; Akalin et al., 2004; Takahashi et al., 2004; Shah, 1997). It has been reported that addition of these probiotics into yoghurt improved its nutritional as well as therapeutic values (Burgain et al., 2011). However, several studies have reported a decrease in the number of viable bifidobacteria in yoghurt due to factors which include oxygen, temperature and post-

© University of Pretoria

production acidification brought on by decrease in pH after fermentation and during refrigeration storage (Lankaputhra and Shah, 1995; Lourens-Hattingh and Viljoen, 2001; Lee and Lucey, 2010).

Over the years, the addition of prebiotics as well as the use of microencapsulation has been essential for the improved survival and viability of probiotic strains in yoghurt (Gallaher and Khil, 1999; Sultana et al., 2000; Sun and Griffiths, 2002; Akalin et al., 2004; Iyer and Kailasapathy, 2005; Özer et al., 2005; Capela et al., 2006; Aryana and Mcgrew, 2007). It is of importance that the materials used for encapsulation be approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as a food grade material (Burgain et al., 2011), they must also be able to protect the cells from acidic stresses and subsequently release viable cells for improved health (Pimentel-González et al., 2009). However, the delivery of lipid based synbiotic microparticles encapsulating probiotics through yoghurt for beneficial purposes has not been much explored. This study aimed to assess the survival of Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 when incorporated into yoghurt and the effect of the microparticles on the physico-chemical properties of yoghurt.

4.3 Materials and Methods

4.3.1 Reagents and bacterial cultures

Biogapress Vegetal BM 297 ATO was obtained in powdered form from (Gattefossé SAS). *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 cultures were obtained from BCCM/LMG Culture collection (Belgium) as 20% glycerol stocks in MRS broth at -70°C and revived according to the manufacturer's specifications. Inulin (purity: 95%), polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) 87-89% partially hydrolysed (Mw: 13000-23000 Da), lactose monohydrate (purity: 99%) were obtained from Sigma Aldrich, South Africa, while dichloromethane (DCM) (analytical grade, purity: 99%) was obtained from Sigma Aldrich Laborchemikalien, Seelze.

4.3.2 Bacterial culturing and enumeration

Frozen stocks of *B. longum* LMG 13197 were allowed to thaw and streaked out onto MRS-cys-HCl agar plates and incubated in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and

© University of Pretoria

Anaerocult C strip for 48 h at 37°C to obtain single colonies. A single colony was then inoculated into 5 ml MRS-cys-HCl broth and incubated anaerobically overnight at 37°C. One millilitre of the overnight culture was then inoculated into 100 ml of MRS broth supplemented with 0.05% cysteine-HCl and incubated anaerobically at 37°C overnight. This culture was subsequently subcultured into fresh 100 ml MRS-cys-HCl broth and incubated as previously described. One millilitre of the culture was used for bacteria enumeration after dilution in Ringer's solution. A subsample of 100 µl was taken from the broth culture and suspended in 900 µl of ¼ strength Ringer's solution. A 10-fold serial dilution was performed and cells were plated out onto MRS-cys-HCl agar plates in triplicates and plates were incubated (General purpose incubator, Shel Lab) at 37°C for 72 h under anaerobic conditions. After incubation, the number of viable cells were determined and recorded as cfu/ml. The remaining 3 ml of the culture was used for bacterial encapsulation while the rest was stored in 10% sterile glycerol at -20°C.

4.3.3 Bacteria encapsulation

Encapsulation method was done according to Pimentel-Gonzalez et al. (2009) with modification. The stored *B. longum* LMG 13197 cultures was allowed to thaw and 1 ml was subcultured into three 250 ml flasks containing 100 ml MRS-cys-HCl broth, and incubated anaerobically at 37°C for 48 h. After incubation, bacteria were harvested by centrifugation, using an Eppendorf centrifuge 5804R (cooled to 4°C) at 20 800 g for 15 min. The pelleted cells (approximately 3.14×10^{8} cfu/ml) were washed once with Ringer's solution and kept at 4°C for 5 min before encapsulation. The first emulsion was prepared by suspending the bacterial pellet into 1 ml of 2% (w/v) inulin. The bacteria-inulin mixture was then added to 1 ml of 2% (w/v) poly-vinyl-alcohol (PVA). The resulting suspension was subsequently added to 10 ml dichloromethane (DCM) containing Vegetal BM 497 ATO at a final concentration of 10% (w/v). The resulting emulsion was homogenized at 8000 rpm for 5 min using a Silverson, L4R, NIMR homogenizer and left to stand at 25°C. The second emulsion was prepared by mixing 15 ml of PVA 2% (w/v) and 5 ml of lactose 5% (w/v). The first emulsion was mixed into the second emulsion and homogenised at 8000 rpm for 5 min using a Silverson, L4R, NIMR homogenizer. The stable emulsion was left to stand in the fume hood for 5 h for DCM evaporation. After evaporation of DCM, the sample was frozen at - 20°C overnight. This was followed by freeze drying using a Virtis bench top, SLC, freeze dryer for

© University of Pretoria

3 days at -75°C. The freeze dryer was set at a condenser temperature and vacuum pressure of – 60°C and 0.26 millitor, respectively.

The same protocol was used to prepare Vegetal BM 297 ATO microparticles encapsulating *B. longum* LMG 13197 without inulin, except bacterial pellet was re-suspended in 1 ml of deionised water before mixing with 1 ml of 2% (w/v) poly-vinyl-alcohol (PVA). The control sample (unencapsulated cells) was prepared by re-suspending B. *longum* cells (approximately 3.14×10^8 cfu/ml) into 25 ml of sterile deionised water and fast-frozen in liquid nitrogen. The frozen cultures were frozen at – 70°C for 1 h before freeze drying in a Virtis bench top, SLC, freeze dryer for 3 days at -75°C. After freeze drying, all the samples were stored in tightly sealed sterile Schott bottles at 4°C for 1 h until further analysis.

4.3.4 Determination of total bacteria encapsulated

The encapsulated sample (0.1 g) was suspended in 900 µl of DCM and vortexed for 30 s. Mixture was spun down using a MiniSpin, Eppendorf at 12 100 g for 30 s and the supernatant removed. The pellet was then resuspended in 900 µl of ¼ strength Ringer’s solution. A tenfold serial dilution was performed and 100 µl of each dilution was plated out in triplicate onto MRS-cys-HCl agar using the pour plate method. The plates were incubated at 37°C for 72 h in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strip to indicate anaerobic conditions.

4.3.5 Survival of encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt

4.3.5.1 Preparation of yoghurt

Yoghurt was prepared in the laboratory as follows: Two hundred and fifty millilitres of skimmed milk (Long life, First choice, South Africa) was mixed with one tablespoon (approximately 8 g) of powdered milk (NIDO, Nestle, South Africa) in three flasks. The mixture was homogenised by thoroughly swirling the flask and then pasteurised at 72°C for 3 min. The pasteurized milk was cooled to 42°C and inoculated with spoonful of plain yoghurt containing (*Streptococcus thermophilus* and *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* subsp *bulgaricus*). The

© University of Pretoria

inoculated milk was then incubated at 37°C until a pH of 4.53 was attained. Yoghurt was pasteurized at 72°C for 30 min to kill the starter cultures as previously done by Sun and Griffiths (2000). This was done to ensure that no viable lactic cultures remained before inoculating with bifidobacteria cells. One millilitre of yoghurt sample was suspended in 9 ml of ¼ strength Ringer's solution. A tenfold serial dilution was performed and 100 µl of each dilution was pour plated in triplicate onto M-17 and MRS-cys-HCl agar for enumerating *S. thermophilus* and *L. delbrueckii* subsp *bulgaricus*, respectively. The plates were incubated at 37°C for 72 h in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strip to indicate anaerobic conditions.

Then 30 ml of the fermented yoghurt was poured into 50 ml sterile containers. Each of the 30 ml aliquot of yoghurt was aseptically supplemented with 1 g of either unencapsulated or encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells (with or without inulin) and stored at 4°C for 6 weeks. The viability of bifidobacteria cells was determined by taking subsamples of 1 ml once a week for bacterial enumeration using viable plate count (VPC), fluorochrome microplate assay (FMA) and flow cytometry assay (FCA). The '0 day' analysis was carried out after overnight cold storage of samples.

4.3.5.2 Enumeration of *B. longum* cells after storage in yoghurt

One millilitre subsamples obtained weekly were serially diluted (tenfold) in ¼ strength Ringer's solution. Aliquots of 100 µl from each dilution were plated out in triplicates onto MRS-cys-HCL agar supplemented with 0.05 % cysteine hydrochloride using the pour plate method. The plates were incubated at 37°C for 72 h under anaerobic conditions (Anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strip). The number of colonies observed were counted, calculated and reported as colony forming units per millilitre (cfu/ml).

© University of Pretoria

4.3.6 Fluorochrome microplate assay

4.3.6.1 Preparation of standard curve

The standard curve preparation was set up as follows: One hundred microlitres of *B. longum* LMG 13197 was inoculated into 25 ml of MRS broth supplemented with 0.05 % cysteine hydrochloride, and then incubated in a shaker incubator at 37°C in anaerobic jars with Anaerocult A gaspaks and Anaerocult C test strips for 72 h. Bacteria from this culture were harvested by centrifugation using the Eppendorf centrifuge 5804R (cooled to 4°C) at 20 800 g for 15 min. The pellet obtained was re-suspended in 2 ml of 0.85 % NaCl in a Falcon tube. One milliliter of the suspension was mixed with 20 ml of 0.85 % NaCl in two separate Falcon tubes labeled live and dead. Sample labeled dead was heat treated in a microwave for 2 min to kill the bacteria. Both live and dead bacteria samples were centrifuged using the Eppendorf centrifuge 5804R (cooled to 4°C) at 20 800 g for 15 min to pellet the cells. Pellets were re-suspended in 10 ml of 0.85 % NaCl. The cultures were adjusted to optical density at 600 nm (OD_{600}) of ~0.4 using a Spectronic® 20 Genesys™ spectrophotometer. Different volumes of live and dead bacteria (Table 4.1) were mixed to achieve different proportions of live: dead cells for determining a standard curve. Viable bacterial counts were determined by VPC for each bacterial mixture and used to correlate the green-to-red ratio obtained after staining. These values were used to plot the standard curve.

Table 4.1: Proportions of live: dead cells used to calculate standard curve.

Ratio of live : dead cells	Live cell suspensions (ml)	Dead cell suspensions (ml)
0:100	0	2.0
10:90	0.2	1.8
50:50	1.0	1.0
90:10	1.8	0.2
100:0	2.0	0

© University of Pretoria

4.3.6.2 Staining of bacteria suspensions and fluorochrome microplate assay

The staining of bacteria cultures was performed using a LIVE/DEAD ® Baclight ™ bacterial viability kit. The bacterial viability kit utilizes propidium iodide (PI) (red fluorescence at 620 nm) and SYTO9 (green fluorescence at 530 nm). The staining solution was prepared according to the manufacturer's instructions to obtain 3.34 mM of SYTO9 and 20 mM of PI stock solutions dissolved in dimethyl sulfoxide. From these concentrations, a 2x staining solution was made by mixing 6 µl of PI and 6 µl of SYTO9 in 2.0 ml of filter sterilized water. Bacteria suspensions were then stained by mixing 100 µl of the bacterial suspension (approximately 1×10^9 cfu/ml) with 100 µl of the 2x staining solution in triplicates into a black 96 well fluorescence microtitre plate, as previously described (Alakomi et al., 2005). The microtitre plates were covered with foil and incubated in the dark for 15 min at room temperature. Fluorescence of bacterial suspensions was measured using the automated Fluorometer Fluoroskan Ascent FL (Lab systems, Helsinki, Finland). The excitation and emission of red fluorescence were 530 nm and 635 nm respectively, while those of green fluorescence were 485 nm and 538 nm respectively. The intensities of the green-to-red ratio was used to compute the colony forming unit in each sample based on the standard curve previously prepared for *B. longum* LMG 13197 (Fig 4.1).

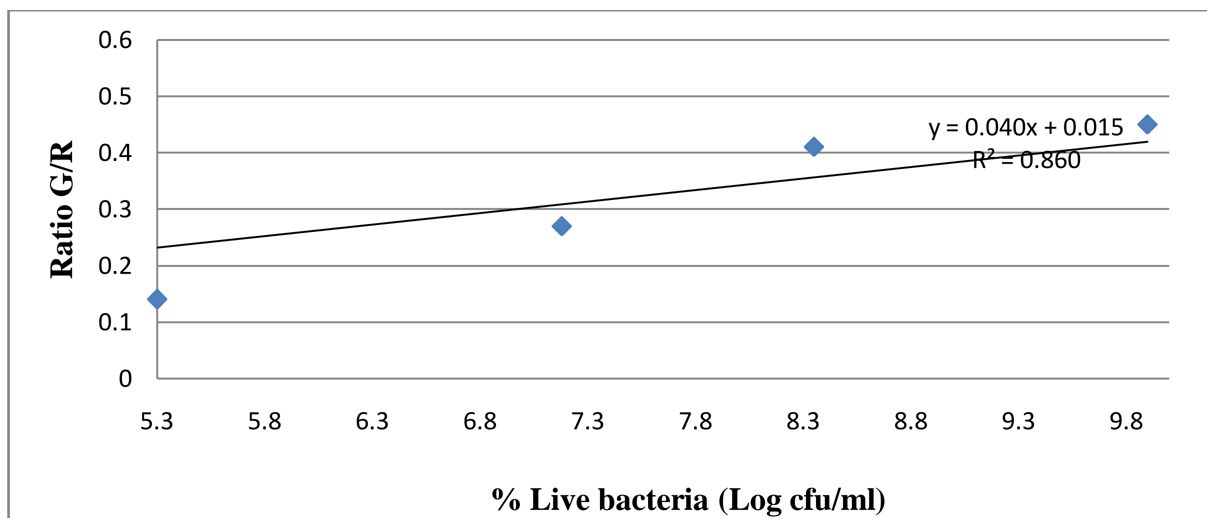


Fig 4.1 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and green/red fluorescence ratio (Ratio $_{G/R}$).

© University of Pretoria

4.3.6.3 Fluorochrome microplate assay of *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells after storage in yoghurt

One millilitre of unencapsulated bacteria obtained after storage in yoghurt was suspended in 9 ml of ¼ Ringer's solution, vortexed for 30 s and pellets were obtained by centrifugation at 12 100 g for 5 min. One millilitre of encapsulated bacteria was suspended in DCM to disrupt the lipid matrix and release the bacteria. Samples were centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min. Pellets were re-suspended in 9 ml of ¼ Ringer's solution and centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min. Pellets obtained from the unencapsulated and encapsulated samples were then re-suspended in 0.85 % NaCl (Alakomi et al., 2005). The bacterial suspensions were adjusted to optical density at 600 nm (OD_{600}) of ~0.4 using a Spectronic® 20 Genesys™ spectrophotometer. Staining was performed by mixing 100 µl of the bacterial suspension with 100 µl of the 2x staining solution (6 µl of PI and 6 µl of SYTO9 in 2.0 ml of filter sterilized water) in triplicates into a black 96 well fluorescence microtitre plate. The microtitre plates were covered with foil and incubated in a dark cupboard for 15 min at room temperature. Fluorescence of bacterial suspensions was measured using the automated Fluorometer Fluoroskan Ascent FL (lab systems, Helsinki, Finland) as previously described.

4.3.7 Flow cytometry assay

4.3.7.1 Preparation of standard curve

One hundred microlitres of *B. longum* LMG 13197 was grown in 25 ml of MRS broth supplemented with 0.05 % cysteine hydrochloride and incubated in a shaker incubator at 37°C under anaerobic conditions for 72 h. Twenty five milliliter of this culture was harvested by centrifugation at 20 800 g for 15 min. The pellet obtained was re-suspended in 2 ml of phosphate buffered saline (PBS) in a Falcon tube. One milliliter of the suspension was mixed with 20 ml of PBS in two separate Falcon tubes labeled live and dead. Sample labeled dead was heat treated in a microwave for 2 min to kill the bacteria. Both Live and dead samples were centrifuged at 20 800 g for 15 min to pellet the bacterial cells. The resulting pellets were re-suspended in 10 ml of PBS and the OD_{600} adjusted to ~0.4 using a spectrophotometer (Spectronic® 20 Genesys™). Different volumes of live and dead bacteria were mixed and

© University of Pretoria

used to determine the standard curve as indicated in Table 4.1. Viable counts was determined for each bacterial suspension and used to correlate the percentage of live bacteria obtained from flow cytometry to plot the standard curve (Fig 4.2).

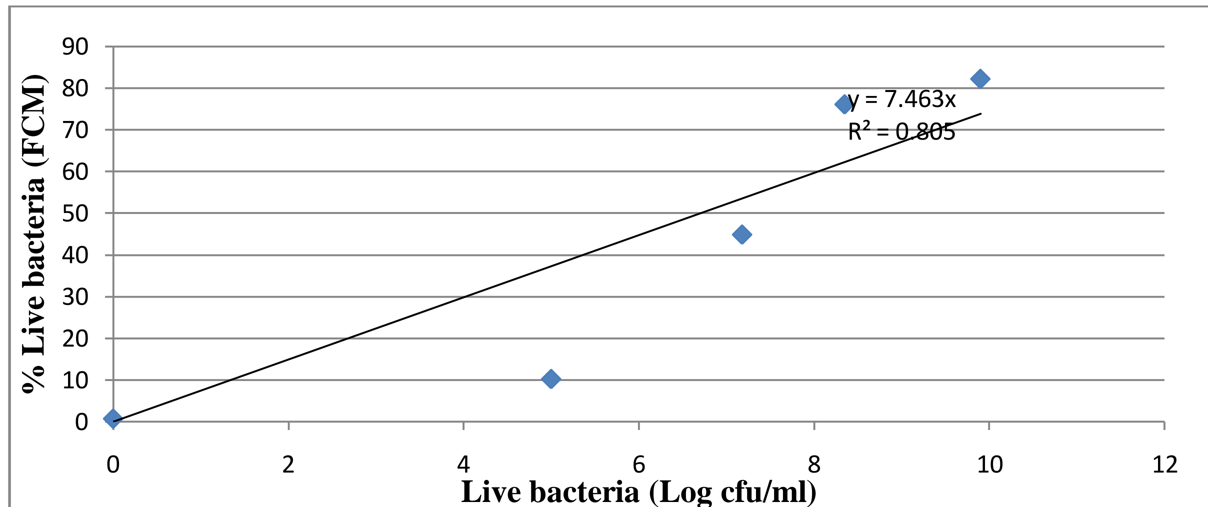


Fig 4.2 Standard curve for *B. longum* LMG 13197 showing relationship between proportion of live bacteria (log cfu/ml) and measured FCM live cells.

4.3.7.2 Staining of bacteria suspensions and flow cytometry assay

Staining of bacteria cultures was performed in triplicates using Live/Dead BacLight bacterial viability kit L7012 (Molecular Probes). Hundred microliters of the bacterial suspension (approximately 10^9 cfu/ml) was mixed with 100 µl of staining mix (1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 1 ml of filter sterilized water) into Eppendorf tubes. The tubes were covered with foil and kept in a dark cupboard for 15 min. After incubation, the samples were transferred to a glass cuvette for analysis using a flow cytometer (FAC-Scan flow cytometer, Becton-Dickinson, Le Pont de Claix, France). The FAC-Scan analyzes cells passing through the sheath fluid using five band filters which include forward angle light scatter (FSC), side angle light scatter (SSC) and 3 fluorescence signals. These signals recognise fluorescent colours at different wavelengths and they include 530 nm {collects green fluorescence of SYT09, 30 nm band width, band pass filters ranging from 675- 715 nm (FITC)}, 585 nm {collects yellow-orange fluorescence} and 695 nm {collects red fluorescence of PI, 40nm band width, band pass filters ranging from 515-545nm (Per-C-P)}. FACSDIVA Version 6.1.3 was used to

© University of Pretoria

perform data analysis and the spectral overlap between the fluorescences emitted by both stains was removed by adjusting the compensation values and voltage threshold.

4.3.7.3 Preparation of control samples

One hundred microliters of *B. longum* LMG 13197 was grown in two flasks containing 25 ml of MRS broth supplemented with 0.05 % cysteine hydrochloride and incubated in a shaker incubator at 37°C under anaerobic conditions for 72 h. After incubation, the flasks containing bacteria cultures were labelled live and dead. Sample labeled dead was heat treated in a microwave for 2 min to kill the bacteria. One millilitre subsample of the live sample was transferred into two Eppendorf tubes and labelled live and unstained, respectively, while 1 ml subsample of the dead sample was transferred into an Eppendorf tube and labelled dead. These samples represented the controls used to differentiate the various bacterial populations into quadrants and to calculate the compensation of spectral overlap of different fluorochromes. The Eppendorf tubes containing live, dead and unstained samples were centrifuged at 20 800 g for 15 min to pellet the bacterial cells. The resulting pellets were re-suspended in 1 ml of PBS and the OD_{600} adjusted to ~0.4 using a spectrophotometer (Spectronic® 20 Genesys™). The staining of bacteria cultures was performed in triplicates using Live/Dead BacLight bacterial viability kit L7012 (Molecular Probes). The Eppendorf tubes containing live and dead bacterial cells were stained separately with 1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 100 µl of mixed stains (1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 1 ml of filter sterilized water). After staining the cells, the tubes were covered with foil and kept in a dark cupboard for 15 min before performing flow cytometry analysis as described in section 4.3.7.2.

4.3.7.4 Flow cytometry assay of cells after storage in yoghurt

One millilitre subsample of unencapsulated bacteria obtained after survival in yoghurt was suspended in 9 ml of ¼ Ringer's solution, vortexed for 30 s and centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min to obtain pellets. One millilitre subsamples of encapsulated bacteria were suspended in DCM and vortexed for 30 s to disrupt the encapsulating matrix and release the bacteria. The suspensions were centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min. The pellets obtained were re-suspended

© University of Pretoria

in 9 ml of ¼ Ringer's solution and centrifuged at 12 100 g for 5 min. Pellets obtained from the unencapsulated and encapsulated samples were then re-suspended in 1 ml of PBS. The bacterial suspensions were adjusted to optical density at 600 nm (OD_{600}) of ~0.4 using a Spectronic® 20 Genesys™ spectrophotometer. Dual staining was performed in triplicates with Live/Dead BacLight bacterial viability kit L7012 (Molecular Probes), where the bacterial suspensions were stained with 100 µl of (1.5 µl of SYT09, 1.5 µl of PI and 1 ml of filter sterilized water). After staining the cells, the tubes were covered with foil and incubated in a dark cupboard for 15 min before flow cytometry analyses as previously described.

4.3.8 Physico-chemical analysis of yoghurt

4.3.8.1 pH analysis

The pH of 9 ml subsample taken from the inoculated yoghurt was measured weekly throughout 6 weeks of storage at 4°C using a Crison Basic 20 pH meter (Denver instruments, USA). Measurements were done in triplicates and the average was recorded.

4.3.8.2 Colour analysis

A Minolta Chroma Meter CR-400 (Konica Minolta, Osaka, Japan) calorimeter was used to analyse colour of 9 ml subsample taken from the inoculated yoghurt throughout 6 weeks of storage at 4°C as described by De Castro-Cislaghi et al. (2012). The yoghurt samples were poured into a sterile petri dish and triplicate readings were taken from each yoghurt sample. The CIELab colour scale measured the following parameters; L* (ranging from 0 to 100, which represents variations from black to white), a* (represents variations from red+ to green–) and b*(represents variations from yellow+ to blue–). The total colour difference (ΔE*) between the unencapsulated sample and each of the encapsulated samples was calculated using the equation below as described by Fritzen-Freire et al. (2012).

$$\Delta E^* = [(\Delta L^*)^2 + (\Delta a^*)^2 + (\Delta b^*)^2]^{1/2}$$

© University of Pretoria

4.3.9 Statistical analysis

Mean values and standard deviations were calculated from the data obtained from three independent trials. Data was analysed using one way ANOVA (analysis of variance), the difference between the means was calculated using LSD (Least Significant Difference) and a p-value less than 0.05 was considered to be statistically significant. Analysis was performed using Statistica version 6.0 (Statsoft Inc, Tulsa, USA).

4.4 Results and Discussions

4.4.1 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in yoghurt as determined by VPC and FMA

Post fermentation acidification has been shown to decrease the viability of probiotics in yoghurt during refrigeration storage (Cruz et al., 2009; Rajapaksha et al., 2013). It is important that probiotic cultures be maintained in yoghurt at levels equal to or above the recommended therapeutic standard for probiotics (10^6 - 10^7 cfu/ml) prior to consumption (Bhadoria and Mahapatra, 2011). Therefore, microencapsulation should ideally protect the probiotic cells from post fermentation acidification.

Our results showed that the unencapsulated cells decreased from 8.52 to 5.82 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (2.70 log units loss) and from 8.54 to 5.90 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (2.64 log units loss) as indicated by VPC and FMA, respectively, during storage in yoghurt after six weeks (Fig 4.3). The decrease in viable unencapsulated cells was not significant until the sixth week, when their level dropped below 6 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (Fig 4.3). This non-significant decrease in the unencapsulated cells can be attributed to the absence of the starter cultures, which would have increased the levels of acid production in their presence (Samona et al., 1996). Although it has been reported that probiotics alone produce low levels of acid (Samona et al., 1996), this study suggests that in the absence of encapsulation, continued exposure of bifidobacteria cells to lactic acids during the storage period possibly led to their death (Kailasapathy, 2006; Burgain et al., 2011). Another possible reason for the decrease in unencapsulated cells is the presence of oxygen which was likely introduced during the production and storage of yoghurt (Miller et al., 2002). It has been reported that probiotics

© University of Pretoria

lack oxygen scavenging cellular mechanisms such as catalases. Thus, exposure of probiotics to oxygen leads to oxidative damage and subsequent death (Talwalkar and Kailasapathy, 2004).

Conversely, our results demonstrate a continuous increase in the number of viable bacteria in yoghurt samples containing encapsulated bacteria (Fig 4.3). Our results showed that although there was a similar trend between FMA and VPC data, the FMA results gave higher counts than those obtained for VPC ($p<0.05$) (Fig 4.3). Viable counts of cells encapsulated with Vegetal increased from 5.62 to 6.54 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (0.89 log increase) and from 6.00 to 7.10 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (1.10 log increase) as per VPC and FMA, respectively, after six weeks of storage in yoghurt (Fig 4.3). There was no significant difference in the number of cells released from Vegetal matrix until the fifth week of storage (Fig 4.3). The cells encapsulated with Vegetal-inulin showed a similar trend, with increase in cells from 5.76 to 7.61 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (1.85 log increase) and from 6.21 to 7.62 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml (1.41 log increase) as indicated by VPC and FMA, respectively (Fig 4.3). The continuous increase in the number of viable bacteria for encapsulated samples over storage period could be attributed to the ability of the encapsulating matrix to protect the cells from yoghurt acidity. Our results also demonstrate that the encapsulated cells remained well above 6 $\log_{10}$ cfu/ml at the end of the 6 weeks, with counts higher for cells encapsulated with Vegetal-inulin (Fig 4.3), possibly because inulin provided extra solids which have been reported to improve probiotic protection (Capela et al., 2006). These results are in agreement with those of Boeni and Pourahmad (2012), who reported that the addition of 2% inulin improved viability of *Lactobacillus casei* and *L. acidophilus* for 3 weeks. These findings are also similar to those of Akalin et al. (2004), who reported higher counts of *B. longum* in yoghurts containing prebiotics for 4 weeks as opposed to the control. In addition to these studies, improved survival of probiotics in yoghurt with the addition of inulin-type prebiotics have been reported by other researchers elsewhere (Shin et al., 2000; Sadek et al., 2004; Özer et al., 2005; Capela et al., 2006; Aryana and McGrew, 2007).

Our study therefore shows that encapsulation using Vegetal-inulin improved survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt during six weeks of storage. This might be attributed to the fact that the physical retention of cells within the lipid matrix limited exposure to adverse factors and also the metabolites produced by these cells were minimal and not sufficient to affect cell viability. Based on these results, it could further be speculated that prolonged

© University of Pretoria

refrigeration of yoghurt containing encapsulated bifidobacteria will not negatively affect the texture and taste of yoghurt. However, this remains to be experimentally determined in future studies.

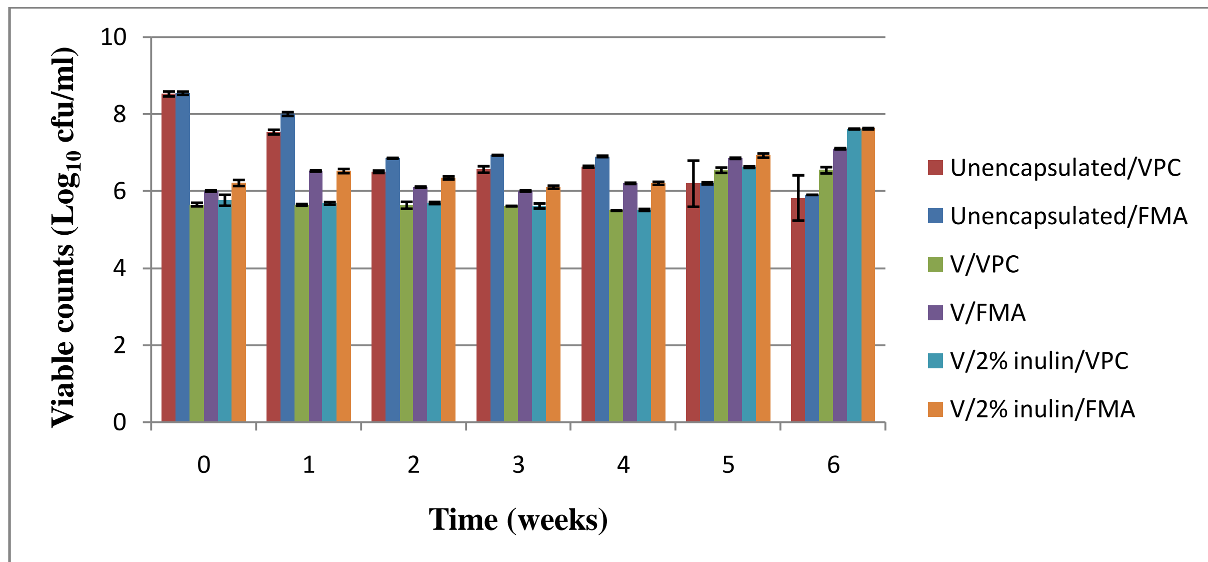


Figure 4.3: Survival of unencapsulated and encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt at 4°C for 6 weeks. V/2% = Vegetal+2% inulin; V= Vegetal; VPC= viable plate count; FMA= fluorochrome microplate assay. Each bar represents the mean of triplicate data from three independent trials; error bars represent standard deviations.

4.4.2 Survival of encapsulated bacteria in yoghurt as determined by flow cytometry

Flow cytometry was used in combination with a Live/Dead Baclight kit L7012 (Molecular Probes) to determine the viability of unencapsulated and encapsulated *B. longum* incorporated into yoghurt. Dot plots of green and red fluorescence were used to differentiate bacterial populations during 6 weeks of storage in yoghurt at 4°C. Each population was represented in quadrants; Q1- injured cells (SYTO9$^+$ PI$^+$); Q$_2$- live cells (SYTO9$^+$ PI$^-$); Q$_3$- unstained viable or lysed cells (SYTO9$^-$ PI$^-$); Q$_4$- dead cells (PI$^+$ SYTO9$^-$). SYTO9 stains all the bacteria cells in a populations, whether dead or alive (Fig 4.4 B and D). PI stains only cells with damaged or compromised bacterial membrane (Fig 4.4 C and E). Dual staining of bacteria cells in a population shows how SYTO9 stains all the cells, but in the presence of PI, SYTO9 is displaced and stains only cells with compromised membranes (4.4 F) (Lahtinen et

© University of Pretoria

al., 2006). This therefore results in a proper discrimination between live, damaged and dead cells.

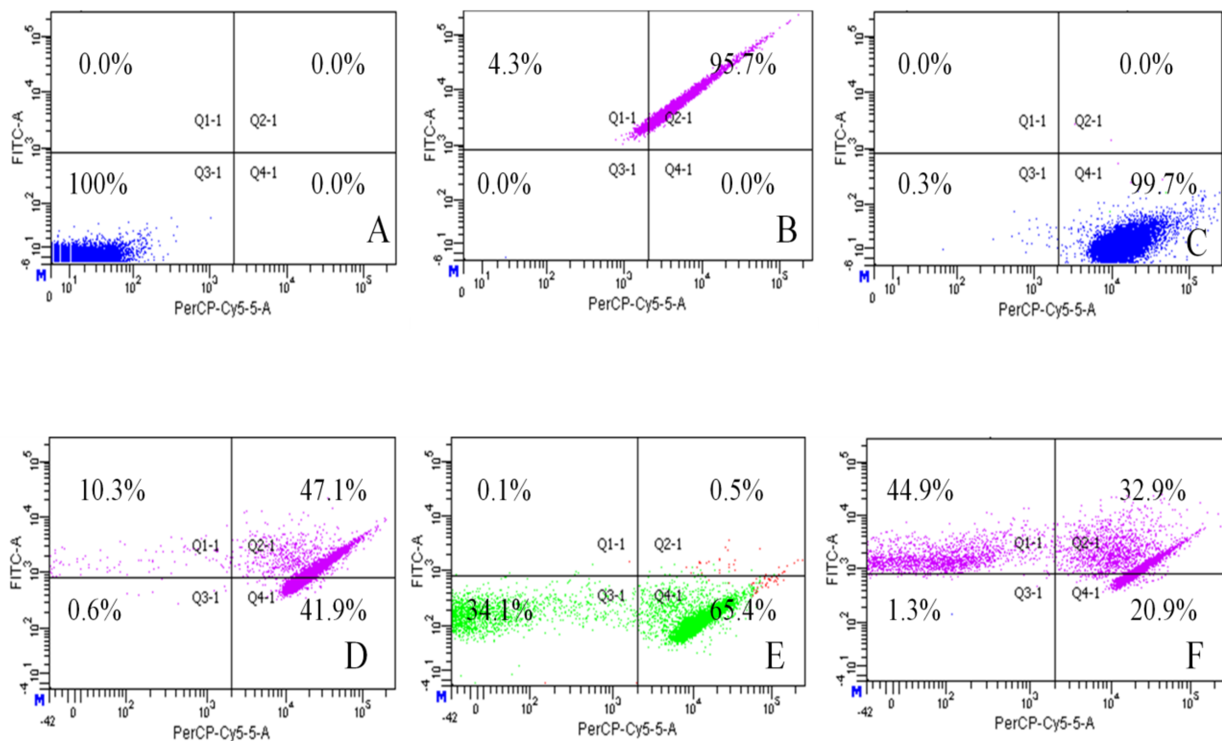


Fig 4.4 Dot plots showing setting of quadrants using *B. longum* LMG 13197 controls: A (Unstained cells), B (SYTO9 stained live cells), C (PI stained dead cells), D (SYTO9 stained mixed cells), E (PI stained mixed cells) and F (Dual stained mixed cells).

Throughout the course of 6 weeks of storage in yoghurt, our results for unencapsulated cells showed that the number of live cells (Q_2) decreased by 37.53%, the injured cells (Q_1) by 5.37% and the dead cells increased by 16.84% (Q_4) (Fig 4.5 A and B). A drastic decrease in the number of viable live cells for unencapsulated cells was apparent after 6 weeks of storage, with a consequent increase in the number of dead cells, suggesting increased cell mortality in the absence of encapsulation (Fig 4.5A and B). There was a good correlation between the percentages obtained from FCA and VPC (Table 4.2), as both methods showed that the number of cells decreased throughout storage period. Light scatter pattern is indicative of bacteria size and granularity or complexity (Veal et al., 2000; Schenk et al., 2011). Light scatter patterns revealed that unencapsulated cells had concentrated to less diffused patterns throughout storage period (Fig 4.5 A and B), suggesting an alteration in the size and internal

© University of Pretoria

structure of bacteria cells, which is often associated with stress (Hewitt et al., 1999; Cánovas et al., 2007).

After six weeks of storage at 4°C, the population of bacteria encapsulated with Vegetal increased by 15.47% for live cells, with a slight decrease 5.53% for dead cells (Fig 4.5 C and D). On the other hand, the population of bacteria encapsulated with Vegetal-inulin increased by 26.83% for live cells and slightly decreased by 0.57% for dead cells during the same period of storage (Fig 4.5 E and F). An insignificant ($p>0.05$) percentage of injured cells (Q1) and dead cells (Q4) was observed for both encapsulated samples (Fig 4.5 C and D; Fig 4.5 E and F), which suggests that encapsulation in the lipid matrix protected the cells from stressful factors encountered during production to storage. Other researchers have utilised flow cytometry to show improved survival of probiotics after encapsulation (Ananta et al., 2005; Rault et al., 2007; Martin-Dejardin et al., 2013). Since there are limited studies on the shelf life of lipid based synbiotic microparticles encapsulating *B. longum* in yoghurt, no direct comparison to other studies could be made. Results showed that by the sixth week of storage, Vegetal-inulin matrix released a higher percentage of live cells than the Vegetal matrix. There was a good correlation between the results obtained by FCA and VPC (Table 4.2). Light scatter pattern for both encapsulated samples demonstrated a change from slightly dispersed patterns (Fig 4.5 C and E) to a concentrated pattern (Fig 4.5D and F). This suggests that although encapsulation protected the cells during freeze drying, the possible exposure to metabolites during storage could lead to changes in the size and granularity/density of bacteria cells.

The high percentage of unstained cells observed in Q_3 (Fig 4.5) could suggest that; 1) The stress associated with freeze drying reduced the ability of cells to take up SYTO9, 2) The bacterial membrane integrity was relatively high and PI could not penetrate across membrane and stain nucleic acids, 3)The presence of debris which are often seen in treated samples, 4) The presence of yoghurt matrices which could also contain attached cells and 5) The presence of lysed bacteria that may have lost their nucleic acids and therefore cannot be stained (Hayouni et al., 2008; Martinez-Abad et al., 2012). Overall, our results demonstrate that encapsulation with Vegetal-inulin improved survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 at 4°C after six weeks of storage in yoghurt.

© University of Pretoria

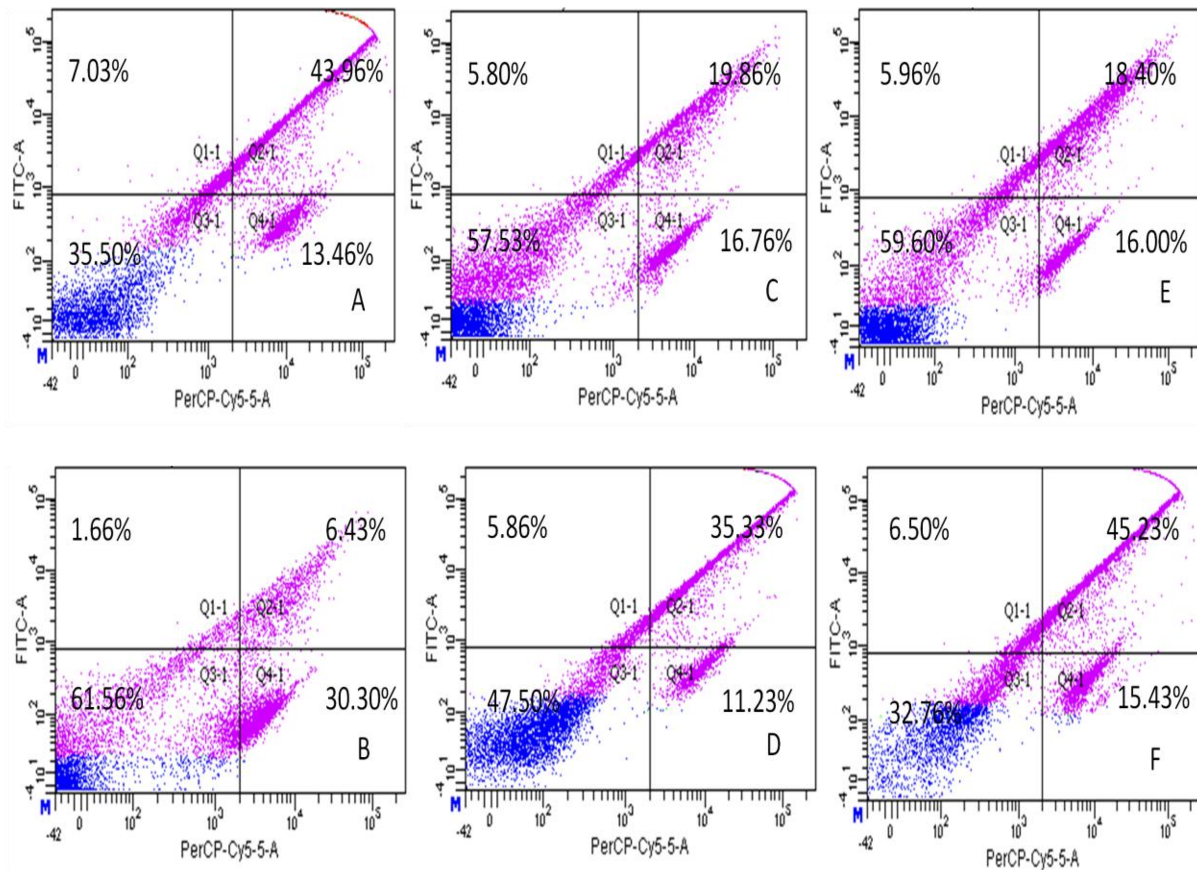


Fig 4.5 Dot plots for *Bifidobacterium longum* LMG 13197 stored in yoghurt at 4°C for 6 weeks: unencapsulated at 0 week (A), unencapsulated at 6th week (B), encapsulated cells without inulin at 0 week (C), encapsulated cells without inulin at 6th week (D), encapsulated cells with 2% inulin at 0 week (E) and encapsulated cells with 2% inulin at 6th week (F).

© University of Pretoria

Table 4.2: Live counts of unencapsulated and Vegetal encapsulated *B. longum* cells (with and without inulin) obtained by flow cytometry and viable plate count at zero and sixth week of storage in yoghurt at 4°C.

Yoghurt samples	FCM (% live bacteria)		VPC log cfu/ml (%)	
	Storage time (weeks)			
	0	6	0	6
Containing unencapsulated cells	43.96 ± 1.70	6.43 ± 4.66	8.52 ± 0.06 (62)	5.82 ± 0.58 (42)
Containing cells encapsulated in Vegetal matrix	19.86 ± 4.99	35.33 ± 2.53	5.65 ± 0.04 (40)	6.54 ± 0.08 (51)
Containing cells encapsulated in Vegetal-inulin matrix	18.40 ± 6.48	45.23 ± 2.31	5.75 ± 0.14 (46)	7.61 ± 0.01 (58)

Relative percentages of live cells obtained by flow cytometry, total counts log (cfu/ml) obtained by viable plate count and related percentages are represented. Reported values are means of triplicate readings from three independent trials ± standard deviations.

4.4.3 Physico-chemical analysis

4.4.3.1 Change in pH of yoghurts containing *B. longum* during storage

The presence of starter cultures is needed for fermentation of yoghurt, which in turn leads to the decrease in pH levels. This decrease in pH level inhibits the growth of pathogens and thus, improves the shelf life of the fermented products (Rajapaksha et al., 2013). Therefore, pH is an important quality attribute of yoghurt (Tramer, 1973). However, the major problem associated with storage of yoghurt is post acidification mediated by β-galactosidase, which is present in yoghurt but only active at refrigeration temperatures (Cruz et al., 2009). Studies have reported that bifidobacteria alone produces acetic and lactic acids at proportions of 3:2, which when in excess can lead to undesirable effects in yoghurt (Arai et al., 1996; Cruz et al.,

© University of Pretoria

2009). Therefore, the use of microencapsulation is necessary to reduce and mask negative effects which might lead to unacceptability of the product.

Overall, our results demonstrate that the length of storage period had a significant effect ($p < 0.05$) on the pH of all the samples (Table 4.3). The pH of yoghurt sample containing the unencapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 decreased to 4.3 from an initial value of 4.51 (0.21 decrease), with significant differences ($p<0.05$) only observed from the 4th to 6th week of storage (Table 4.3). The continued production of acids by the unencapsulated bifidobacteria cells possibly contributed to the drop in pH (Samona et al., 1996; Marshall and Tamime, 1997; Vinderola et al., 2002; Kailasapathy, 2006). This significant drop in pH would explain the decrease in the number of viable unencapsulated cells (Fig 4.3). Studies have shown that the final pH of yoghurt can affect the viability of bifidobacteria cells (Shah et al., 1995; Vinderola et al., 2000). Akalin et al. (2004) reported that at a final pH of 4.42, a significant decrease in the number of viable *B. longum* stored at 4°C for 4 weeks was observed. Furthermore, our results (Fig 4.3 and Table 4.3) are in agreement with Lankaputhra and Britz (1996), who reported that pH values at or below 4.3 can reduce viability of bifidobacteria. On the other hand, the pH of yoghurt samples containing Vegetal encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 decreased from an initial value of 4.5 to 4.45 (0.05 decrease), with significant effect ($p<0.05$) observed only between the 4th and 5th week (Table 4.3). Similarly, the pH of yoghurt samples containing Vegetal-inulin encapsulated bacteria decreased from an initial value of 4.52 to 4.46 (0.06 decrease), with significant effect ($p<0.05$) also observed between the 4th and 5th week of storage (Table 4.3). The drop in pH of yoghurt samples containing encapsulated cells was not significant ($p> 0.05$) (Table 4.3), partially explaining why viability of the cells was not affected as shown earlier (Fig 4.3). Studies have reported slight decrease in pH values of yoghurt containing inulin over storage time (Paseephol et al., 2008; Boeni and Pourahmad, 2012). Akalin et al. (2004) also reported a 0.06 decrease in pH of yoghurt samples containing *B. longum* and prebiotics after 4 weeks at 4°C.

In comparison to the yoghurt sample containing unencapsulated cells, these findings suggest that encapsulation offered protection to the bifidobacteria cells, and the permeability and solubility properties of the matrix ensured that the metabolites produced by the cells are kept in the matrix and not released into the product, thus minimizing alterations to pH of yoghurt into which they were incorporated. Kailasapathy (2006) reported that post acidification was slower in yoghurt samples containing encapsulated probiotics as opposed to those containing

© University of Pretoria

free probiotics after 6 weeks of storage at 4°C. Therefore, our results demonstrate that the pH of yoghurt was not affected by the incorporation of Vegetal encapsulated probiotics. The presence of inulin had no significant effect on the pH of yoghurt.

© University of Pretoria

Table 4.3: pH changes in yoghurt samples containing unencapsulated and Vegetal encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 (with and without inulin) stored at 4°C for 6 weeks.

Yoghurt samples	**Storage time (weeks)**						
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Containing unencapsulated cells	4.51±0.01[c]	4.51±0.02[c]	4.50±0.01[c]	4.50±0.01[c]	4.49±0.01[c]	4.40±0.10[b]	4.30±0.01[a]
Containing cells encapsulated in Vegetal matrix	4.50±0.01[c]	4.50± 0.01[c]	4.50± 0.01[c]	4.49±0.01[bc]	4.48±0.02[b]	4.45±0.01[a]	4.45±0.01[a]
Containing cells encapsulated in Vegetal-inulin matrix	4.52±0.01[e]	4.51±0.01[de]	4.51±0.01[cd]	4.49±0.01[bc]	4.49±0.01[b]	4.46±0.01[a]	4.46±0.01[a]

Reported values are means of triplicate readings from three independent trials. Values with different letters within the same row differ significantly ($p<0.05$).

© University of Pretoria

4.4.3.2 Change in colour of yoghurts containing *B. longum* during storage

The evaluation of colour in food products determines their acceptance or rejection by the consumers, as it is the first and important attribute perceived (Noh et al., 2013). Colour assessment in food products has been used as an indirect measure of pigment contents, as such ensures that the quality of food is maintained (Pathare et al., 2013). The natural pigments which give colour to food products include carotenoids (orange, yellow and red), chlorophylls (green) and anthocyanins (blue, red) (Barrett et al., 2010). Of all the colour systems used for colour measurements, the CIELAB (Commission Internationale de I' Eclairage's) colour system has been commonly used in food industries due to its ability to define two colour attributes a^* and b^* as well as a psychometric index of lightness (L^*) (Sacks and Francis, 2001; Barrett et al., 2010; Granato and Masson, 2010; Pathare et al., 2013).

There were significant differences ($p< 0.05$) in colour attributes (L^*, a^* and b^*) within each of the yoghurt samples containing unencapsulated and encapsulated cells throughout 6 weeks of storage (Table 4.4). The yoghurt sample containing unencapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells had final values of 84.88, -3.12 and 7.37 for L^*, a^* and b^* attributes, respectively (Table 4.4). On the other hand, the final values obtained for yoghurt containing Vegetal encapsulated cells were 84.51, -3.11 and 7.42 for L^*, a^* and b^* attributes, respectively (Table 4.4). Consequently, the final values obtained for yoghurt containing Vegetal-inulin encapsulated cells were 87.21, -3.14 and 8.61 for L^*, a^* and b^* attributes, respectively (Table 4.4).

With respect to the $L^*$and b^* attributes, results showed an increase in L^* and b^* values with significant differences ($p<0.05$) observed within the samples throughout 6 weeks of storage (Table 4.4). The increase in L^* and b^* values of the samples indicates the tendency towards white and yellow colour. This might be attributed to the colour of the ingredients present in the yoghurt samples which included the whitish colour of inulin and the white to cream colour of milk. The whiteness of milk has been linked to the dispersion of casein micelles and fat globules, which are responsible for the diffusion of incident light (Nozière et al., 2006; Aryana and Mcgrew, 2007). Conversely, studies have stated that yellowness can be linked to the presence of carotenoids in milk (Nozière et al., 2006; Kalač, 2012). Our results

© University of Pretoria

demonstrate that the presence of inulin had a significant effect ($p<0.05$) on the lightness (L^*) and yellowness (b^*) of yoghurt by the 6th week of storage (Table 4.4). This result is similar to that of Damian (2013) who also reported a high L^* value for yoghurt samples containing inulin.

With respect to the a^* attribute, results showed a decrease in a^* values with significant differences ($p<0.05$) within the samples throughout 6 weeks of storage (Table 4.4). The decrease in a^* values might be attributed to the presence of riboflavin in milk. Riboflavin is a green compound which has been regarded as part of milk’s natural pigment concentration, and thus contributes to the colour of milk (Nozière et al., 2006). Although all the yoghurt samples appeared yellowish-white (cream) in colour at the end of storage period, the total colour difference (ΔE^*) observed between the yoghurt samples containing unencapsulated and the Vegetal and Vegetal-inulin encapsulated cells by the 6th week were 0.37 and 2.97, respectively (Table 4.4). This suggests that the colour changes of the yoghurt samples containing the encapsulated cells are minor to not obvious to the human eye (Martinez-Cervera et al., 2011). Therefore, it could be speculated that this would have no negative effect on consumer acceptability of yoghurt containing Vegetal encapsulated probiotics.

© University of Pretoria

Table 4.4: Changes in the colour of yoghurt samples containing *B. longum* LMG 13197 cells during storage at 4°C for 6 weeks.

Storage time (weeks)	**Yoghurt samples**											
	Containing unencapsulated cells				Containing cells encapsulated in Vegetal matrix				Containing cells encapsulated in Vegetal-inulin matrix			
	Colour attributes											
	L*	**a***	**b***	**ΔE***	**L***	**a***	**b***	**ΔE***	**L***	**a***	**b***	**ΔE***
0	65.82 ± 0.14^{a}	–1.68 ± 1.10^{c}	–0.44 ± 0.02^{a}	-	63.75 ± 2.01^{a}	–1.30 ± 0.03^{d}	–1.02 ± 0.36^{a}		77.96 ± 1.68^{b}	–2.04 ± 0.18^{c}	3.04 ± 0.95^{b}	
1	78.91 ± 0.51^{b}	–2.19 ± 0.02^{bc}	3.73 ± 0.24^{b}		78.93 ± 1.13^{b}	–2.28 ± 0.18^{c}	4.02 ± 0.77^{b}		68.74 ± 1.06^{a}	–1.11 ± 0.11^{d}	–0.18 ± 0.20^{a}	
2	81.54 ± 0.90^{c}	–2.42 ± 0.12^{ab}	5.63 ± 0.64^{cd}		80.14 ± 2.16^{b}	–2.59 ± 0.31^{b}	4.31 ± 0.65^{b}		78.30 ±0.96^{b}	–2.13 ± 0.17^{c}	3.31 ± 0.46^{b}	
3	82.46 ± 0.24^{d}	–2.81 ± 0.06^{ab}	5.91 ± 0.18^{d}		86.47 ± 0.01^{d}	–3.11 ± 0.08^{a}	8.63 ± 0.07^{e}		86.20 ± 0.13^{d}	–3.18 ± 0.04^{a}	8.22 ± 0.13^{d}	
4	82.20 ± 0.24^{cd}	–2.24 ± 0.03^{bc}	5.37 ± 0.20^{c}		83.77 ± 0.09^{c}	–2.42 ±0.03^{bc}	6.48 ± 0.10^{c}		84.18 ± 0.32^{c}	–2.43 ± 0.03^{b}	6.43 ± 0.13^{c}	
5	85.14 ± 0.26^{e}	–3.04 ± 0.02^{a}	8.33 ± 0.01^{f}		83.19 ± 0.26^{c}	–3.14 ± 0.13^{a}	6.95 ± 0.37^{cd}		86.22 ± 0.10^{d}	–3.20 ± 0.06^{a}	8.82 ± 0.10^{d}	
6	84.51 ± 0.15^{e}	–3.12 ± 0.04^{a}	7.37 ± 0.14^{e}		84.88 ± 0.05^{cd}	–3.11 ± 0.08^{a}	7.42 ± 0.17^{d}	0.37	87.21 ± 0.08^{d}	–3.14 ± 0.01^{a}	8.61 ± 0.10^{d}	2.97

Reported values are means of triplicate readings from three independent trials. Values with different letters within the same column differ significantly ($p<0.05$).

© University of Pretoria

4.5 Conclusion

This study showed that Vegetal BM 297 ATO is suitable for the encapsulation and protection of *B. longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt. The presence of inulin improved the survival of probiotics in yoghurt, as bacterial viable counts remained above the recommended therapeutic minimum at the end of the storage period. Post acidification was reduced in the presence of Vegetal-inulin microparticles did not significantly decrease the pH in yoghurt. This suggests that the metabolites produced by the probiotic cells are kept within the matrix; as a result, the taste of yoghurt will not be negatively affected. Colour analysis suggests that the incorporation of Vegetal-inulin microparticles had an effect on the colour of yoghurt, although the total colour change was considered minor or not noticeable to the human eye. Therefore, yoghurt is a suitable vehicle for the delivery of Vegetal-inulin encapsulated probiotics.

4.6 References

Akalin, A.S., Fenderya, S., Akbulut, N., 2004. Viability and activity of bifidobacteria in yoghurt containing fructooligosaccharides during refrigerated storage. International Journal of Food Science and Technology 39 (6), 613-621.

Alakomi, H. L., Mättö, J., Virkajärvi, I., Saarela, M., 2005. Application of microplate scale Fluorochrome staining assay for the assessment of viability of probiotic preparations. Journal of Microbiological Methods 62, 25-35.

Ananta, E., Volkert, M., Knorr, D., 2005. Cellular injuries and storage stability of spray-dried *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* GG. International Dairy Journal 15, 399-409.

Arai, O., Sakaki, M., Sugimoto, T., 1996. Effectiveness of yoghurt incorporated with enteric bifidobacteria. Food Industry 39 (1), 53-56.

Aryana, K.J., McGrew, P., 2007. Quality attributes of yoghurt with *Lactobacillus casei* and various prebiotics. LWT- Food Science and Technology 40, 1808-1814.

© University of Pretoria

Aswal, P., Shukla, A., Priyadarshi, S., 2012. Yoghurt: preparation, characteristics and recent advancements. Cibtech Journal of Bio-Protocols 1 (2), 32-44.

Barrett, D.M., Beaulieu, J.C., Shewfelt, R., 2010. Color, flavour, texture and nutritional quality of fresh-cut frits and vegetable: desirable levels, instrumental and sensory measurement and the effects of processing. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition 50 (5), 369-389.

Bhadoria, P.B.S., Mahapatra, S.C., 2011.Prospects, technological aspects and limitations of probiotics- A worldwide review. European Journal of Food Research and Review 1(2), 23-42.

Boeni, S., Pourahmad, R., 2012. Use of inulin and probiotic lactobacilli in synbiotic yoghurt production. Annals of Biological Research 3 (7), 3486- 3491.

Bunthoff, C.J., Bloemen, K., Breeuwer, P., Rombouts, F.M., Abee, T., 2001. Flow cytometric assessment of viability of lactic acid bacteria. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 67 (5), 2326- 2335.

Bunthoff, C.J., Abee, T., 2002. Development of flow cytometric method to analyse subpopulations of bacteria in probiotic products and dairy starters. Applied Environmental Microbiology 68, 2934- 2942.

Burgain, J., Gaiani, C., Linder, M., Scher, J., 2011. Encapsulation of probiotic living cells: from the laboratory scale to industrial applications. Journal of Food Engineering 104, 467-483.

Cánovas, M., Garcia, V., Bernal, V., Torroglosa, T., Iborra, J.L., 2007. Analysis of Escherichia coli cell state by flow cytometry during whole cell catalyzed biotransformation for L-carnitine production. Process Biochemistry 42, 25-33.

Capela, P., Hay, T.K.C., Shah, N.P., 2006. Effect of cryoprotectants, prebiotics and microencapsulation on the survival of probiotic organisms in yoghurt and freeze dried yoghurt. Food Research International 39, 203-211.

© University of Pretoria

Cruz, A.G., Antunes, A.E.C., Pilleggi, A.L.O.P.S., Faria, J.A.F., Saad, S.M.I., 2009. Ice cream as probiotic food carrier. Food Research International 42(9), 1233-1239.

Damian, C., 2013. Influence of dietary fiber addition on some properties of yoghurt. Ovidius University Annals of Chemistry 24 (1), 17-20.

De Castro-Cislaghi, F.P., Carina Dos Reis, E.S., Fritzen-Freire, C.B., Lorenz, J.G., Sant'Anna, E.S., 2012. *Bifidobacterium Bb-12* microencapsulation by spray drying with whey: Survival under simulated gastrointestinal conditions, tolerance to NaCL, and viability during storage. Journal of Food Engineering 113, 186-193.

FAO/WHO, Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations/World Health Organisation, 2002. Guidelines for the evaluation of probiotics in food. London, Ontario, Canada. April 30 and may 1, 2002.

Fooks, L.J., Gibson, G.R., 2002. Probiotics as modulators of the gut flora. British Journal of Nutrition 88 (1), S39-S49.

Fritzen-Freire, C.B., Prudencio, E.S., Amboni, R.D.M.C., Pinto, S.S., Negrão-Murakami, A.N., Murakami, F, S., 2012. Microencapsulation of bifidobacteria by spray drying in the presence of prebiotics. Food Research International 45, 306-312.

Gallaher, D.D., Khil, J., 1999. The effect of synbiotics on colon carcinogenesis in rats. Journal of Nutrition 129,1483S-14867S.

Gattefossé SAS, technical and material safety data sheet. Regulatory Department, regulatory@gattefosse.com.

Gonzalez, N.J., Adhikari, K., Sancho-Madriz, M., 2011. Sensory characteristics of peach flavoured yoghurt drinks containing prebiotics and synbiotics. LWT- Food Science and Technology 44, 158-163.

© University of Pretoria

Granato, D., Masson, M.L., 2010. Instrumental color and sensory acceptance of soy-based emulsions: a response surface approach. Ciênciae Tecnologiade Alimentos 30 (4), 1090-1096.

Hayouni, E.A., Bouix, M., Abedrabba, M., Leveau, J.Y., Hamdi, M., 2008. Mechanism of action of *Melaleuca armillaris* (Sol. ExGaertu) Sm. Essential oil on six LAB strains as assessed by multiparametric flow cytometry and automated microtiter- based assay. Food Chemistry 111, 707-718.

Hewitt, C.J., Caron, G.N.V., Nienow, A.W., McFarlane, C.M., 1999. The use of multiparameter flow cytometry to compare the physiological response of *Escherichia coli* W3110 to glucose limitation during batch, fed-batch and continuous culture cultivations. Journal of Biotechnology 75, 251-264.

Iyer, C., Kailasapathy, K., 2005. Effect of Co-encapsulation of probiotics with prebiotics on increasing the viability of encapsulated bacteria under in vitro acidic and bile salt conditions and in yoghurt. Journal of Food Science 70 (1), M18-M23.

Kailasapathy, K., 2006. Survival of free and encapsulated probiotic bacteria and their effect on the sensory properties of yoghurt. LWT- Food Science and Technology 39 (10), 1221-1227.

Kalač, P., 2012. Carotenoids, ergosterol and tocopherols in fresh and preserved herbage and their transfer to bovine milk fat and adipose tissues: A review. Journal of Agrobiology 29 (1), 1-13.

Lahtinen, S.J., Gueimonde, M., Ouwehand, A.C., Reinkainen, J.P., Salminen, S.J., 2006. Comparison of four methods to enumerate probiotic bifidobacteria in a fermented food product. Food Microbiology 23, 571-577.

Lankaputhra, W.E.V., Shah, N.P., 1995. Survival of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and Bifidobacterium spp in the presence of acid and bile salts. Cultured Products Journal 30 (3), 2-7.

© University of Pretoria

Lankaputhra, W.E.V., Britz, M., 1996. Survival of bifidobacteria during refrigerated storage in the presence of acids and hydrogen peroxide. Milchwissenschaft 51, 65-70.

Lee, Y. K., Salminen, S., 1995. The coming age of probiotics. Trends in Food Science and Technology 6, 241-245.

Lee, W.J., Lucey, J.A., 2010. Formation and physical properties of yoghurt. Asian-Australasian Journal of Animal Sciences.

Lourens-Hattingh, A., Viljoen, B. C., 2001. Review: Yoghurt as probiotic carrier food. International Dairy Journal 11, 1-17.

Marshall, V.M., Tamime, A.Y., 1997. Starter cultures employed in the manufacture of bio fermented milks. International Dairy Journal 50, 35-39.

Martinez-Abad, A., Sánchez, G., Lagaron, J.M., Ocio, M.J., 2012.On the different growth conditions affecting silver antimicrobial efficacy on *Listeria monocytogenes* and *Salmonella enterica*. International Journal of Food Microbiology 158, 147-154.

Martínez-Cervera, S., Salvador, A., Muguerza, B., Moulay, L., Fiszman, S.M., 2011. Cocoa fibre and its application as a fat replacer in chocolate muffins. LWT- Food Science and Technology 44, 729-736.

Martin-Dejardin, F., Ebel, B., Lemetais, G., Nguyen, H., Gervais, P., Cachon, R., Chambin, O., 2013. A way to follow the viability of encapsulated *Bifidobacterium bifidum* subjected to a freeze-drying process in order to target the colon: interest of flow cytometry. European Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences 49 (2), 166-174.

Miller, C.W., Nguyen, M.H., Rooney, M., Kailasapathy, K., 2002.The influence of packaging materials on the dissolved oxygen content of probiotic yoghurt. Packaging Technology and Science 15 (3), 133-138.

© University of Pretoria

Noh, H.J., Seo, H.M., Lee, J.H., Chang, Y.H., 2013. Physicochemical and sensory properties of yoghurt supplemented with Corni fructus during storage. Preventive Nutrition and Food Science 18 (1), 45-49.

Nozière, P., Graulet, B., Lucas, A., Martin, B., Groiler, P., Doreau, M., 2006. Carotenoids for ruminants: From forages to dairy products. Animal Feed Science and Technology 131, 418-450.

Özer, D., Akin, S., Özer, B., 2005. Effects of inulin and lactulose on the survival of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* LA-5 and *Bifidobacterium bifidum* BB-02 in acidophilus-bifidus yoghurt. Food Science and Technology International 11 (1), 019-026.

Pathare, B.P., Umezuruike, L.O., Al-Julanda Al-Said, F., 2013. Colour measurement and analysis in fresh and processed foods: A review. Food Bioprocess Technology 6 (1), 36-60.

Paseephol, T., Small, D.M., Sherkat, F., 2008.Rheology and texture of set yoghurt as affected by inulin addition. Journal of Texture Studies 39, 617-634.

Picot, A., Lacroix, C., 2004. Encapsulation of bifidobacteria in whey protein based microcapsules and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Dairy Journal 14, 505-515.

Pimentel-González D.J., Campos-Montiel, R.G., Lobato-Calleros, C., Pedroza-Islas, R., Vernon-Carter, E.J., 2009. Encapsulation of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* in double emulsions formulated with sweet whey as emulsifier and survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions. Food Research International 42, 292-297.

Rajapaksha, D.S.W., Kodithuwakku, K.A.H.T., Silva, K.F.S.T., Rupasinghe, R.A.J.N.L., 2013. Evaluation of potassium sorbate and E-polylysine for their inhibitory activity on post acidification of set yogurt under cold storage for 20 days. International Journal of Scientific and Research Publications 3 (6), 1-7.

© University of Pretoria

Rault, A., Beal, C., Ghorbal, S., Jean-Claude, O., Bouix, M., 2007. Multiparametric flow cytometry allows rapid assessment and comparison of lactic acid bacteria viability after freezing and during frozen storage. Cryobiology 55, 35-43.

Sacks, E.J., Francis, D.M., 2001. Genetic and environmental variation for tomato flesh color in a population of modern breeding lines. Journal of American Society for Horticultural Science 126 (2), 221-226.

Sadek, Z.I., El-Shafei, K., Murad, H.A., 2004. Utilization of xanthan gum and Inulin as prebiotics for lactic acid bacteria. In: proceedings of 9th Egyptian Conference for Dairy Science and Technology, Cairo, Egypt; pp.269-283.

Samona, A., Robinson, R.K., Marakis, S., 1996. Acid production by bifidobacteria and yoghurt bacteria during fermentation and storage of milk. Food Microbiology 13, 275-280.

Saarela, M., Lähteenmäki, L., Crittenden, R., Salminen, S., Mattila-Sandholm, T., 2002. Gut bacteria and health foods-The European perspective. International Journal of Food Microbiology 78 (1-2), 99-117.

Schenk, M., Raffellini, S., Guerrero, S., Guillermo, A.B., Maris Alzamora., 2011. Inactiavtion of *Escherichia coli, Listeria innocua and Saccharomyces cerevisiae* by UV-C light: Study of cell injury by flow cytometry. Food Science and Technology 44, 191-198.

Shah, N.P., Lankaputhra, W.E.V., Britz, M., Kyle, W.S.A., 1995. Survival of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium longum* in commercial yoghurt during refrigerated storage. International Dairy Journal 5, 515-521.

Shah, N.P., 1997. Bifidobacteria: characteristics and potential for application in fermented milk products. Milchwissenschaft 52, 16-20.

Shin, H.S., Lee, J.H., Pestka, J.J., Ustunol, Z., 2000. Growth and viability of commercial *Bifidobacterium* spp in skim milk containing oligosaccharides and inulin. Journal of Food Science 65 (5), 884-887.

© University of Pretoria

Sultana, K., Godward, G., Reynolds, N., Arumugaswamy, R., Peiris, P., Kailasapathy, K., 2000. Encapsulation of probiotic bacteria with alginate- starch and evaluation of survival in simulated gastrointestinal conditions and in yoghurt. International Journal of Food Microbiology 62, 47-55.

Sun, W., Griffiths, M.W., 2000. Survival of bifidobacteria in yoghurt and simulated gastric juice following immobilisation in gellan-xanthan beads. International Journal of Food Microbiology 61, 17-25.

Takahashi, N., Xiao, J.Z., Miyaji, K., Yaeshiima, T., Hiramatsu, A., Iwatsuki, K., Kokubo, S., Hosono, A., 2004. Selection of acid tolerant bifidobacteria and evidence for a low pH inducible acid tolerance response in *Bifidobacterium longum*. Journal of Dairy Research 71(3), 340-345.

Talwalkar, A., Kailasapathy, K., 2004. The role of oxygen in the viability of probiotic bacteria with reference to *Lactobacillus acidophilus* and *Bifidobacterium*, spp. Current Issues Intestinal Microbiology 5, 1-8.

Tramer, J., 1973. “Yoghurt cultures”. International Journal of Dairy Technology 26, 16-21

Vasiljevic, T., Shah N.P., 2008. Probiotics-from Metchnikoff to bioactives. International Dairy Journal 18, 714-728.

Veal, D.A., Deere, D., Ferrari, B., Piper, J., Atfield, P.V., 2000. Fluorescence staining and flow cytometry for monitoring microbial cells. Journal of Immunological Methods 243, 191-210.

Venter, S.C., 2007. Prebiotics: an update. Journal of Family Ecology and Consumer Sciences 35, 17-25.

Vinderola, C.G., Bailo, N., Reinheimer, J.A., 2000. Survival of probiotic microflora in Argentinean yoghurts during refrigerated storage. Food Research International 33, 97-102.

© University of Pretoria

Vinderola, C.G., Mocchiutti, P., Reinheimer, J.A., 2002. Interactions among lactic acid starter and probiotic bacteria used for fermented dairy products. Journal of Dairy Science 85, 721-729.

Younus, S., Masud, T., Aziz, T., 2002.Quality evaluation of market yoghurt/Dalin. Pakistan Journal of Nutrition 1, 226-230.

© University of Pretoria

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

CHAPTER 5

Conclusions and Recommendations

© University of Pretoria

5.1 Conclusions

- The production of synbiotic lipid based microparticles using Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin for the encapsulation of *B. longum* LMG 13197 by freeze drying was successful. High bacteria viability was obtained with non centrifuged formulations containing 2 % (w/v) inulin.

- The Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin microparticles gave a high encapsulation efficiency of 82%, which indicates that freeze drying of the *B. longum* within this matrix protected the cells from the detrimental processing conditions associated with freeze drying process, thereby retaining high numbers of viable cells within the microparticles.

- Scanning electron microscopy revealed irregular shaped microparticles, which exhibited rough surfaces and has an acceptable size of 33.4 µm. This indicates that the microparticles will potentially not affect the texture and mouthfeel of the food products into which they will be incorporated. It also showed absence of bacteria cells on the sides or surfaces of the microparticles, as well as an even distribution of the cells within the microparticles, indicting efficient encapsulation.

- Confocal scanning laser microscopy also showed that microparticles contained a high loading of bifidobacteria cells, which suggests that high number of viable probiotics will be delivered.

- Addition of inulin at 2% (w/v) improved the protection efficiency of Vegetal BM 297 ATO. Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin matrix protected *B. longum* LMG 13197 in the simulated gastric fluid and displayed significant release of cells in simulated intestinal fluid. More viable cells were present in Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin matrix at the end of gastrointestinal transit; therefore this matrix had the potential to continuously release cells into the gut for colonization.

- The recommended level required by food industries for probiotic functions is 10^6 cfu/g. After 6 weeks of storage at 25°C , microencapsulation in Vegetal BM 297

© University of Pretoria

ATO-inulin matrix by freeze drying improved survival of *B. longum* LMG 13197 by 3 weeks, when compared to the unencapsulated cells.

- Compared to the unencapsulated cells, encapsulation with Vegetal BM 297 ATO did not increase shelf life of *B. longum* LMG 13197 at 4°C. With the addition of inulin, the numbers of viable cells dropped below the recommended levels (10^6 cfu/g) after 5 weeks. This suggests that Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin encapsulated bacteria should be stored under refrigeration conditions in order to attain maximum shelf life.

- Vegetal BM 297 ATO is suitable for the encapsulation and protection of *B. longum* LMG 13197 in yoghurt. Viable counts of bacteria remained above the recommended therapeutic minimum after 6 weeks of storage at 4°C. Therefore, encapsulation with Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin improved the survival of probiotics in yoghurt.

- There was no significant decrease in pH of yoghurt sample containing Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin encapsulated *B. longum* LMG 13197. This suggests that the metabolites produced by the probiotic cells were kept within the matrix, thus the taste of yoghurt will not be negatively affected.

- Although the incorporation of Vegetal-inulin microparticles had a significant effect on the colour of yoghurt, the change was considered minor to the human eye. Therefore, yoghurt is a suitable vehicle for the delivery of Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin encapsulated probiotics.

- Based on the above conclusions, synbiotic Vegetal BM 297 ATO-inulin microparticles produced by freeze drying have the potential for application in food industries.

© University of Pretoria

5.2 Recommendations for Future work

- The use of other prebiotics and lipid matrices for the prolonged shelf life of probiotics should be investigated.

- The effect of other parameters such as oxygen and water activity on the survival of vegetal-inulin encapsulated *B. longum* during storage needs to be analyzed. This will ensure a well rounded understanding of the conditions under which probiotics must be stored.

- Incorporation of other protective agents such as vitamins, plant and fruit extracts alongside Vegetal BM 297 ATO to determine whether improved survival of probiotics can be achieved. This will allow for the production of a variety of formulations using this lipid matrix for improved quality of final products, which will in turn provide multiple essential health benefits.

- Although yoghurt is the most popular and most consumed fermented dairy product, consumers are beginning to show interest in other fermented food products like kefir and mageu. In order to increase the range of food products to which probiotics can be incorporated into, future studies should test the survival of encapsulated probiotics in other fermented products, as well as the effect of their presence on the organoleptic properties of those products.

- Since tolerance of bifidobacteria to detrimental conditions is species as well as strain specific, a wider range of strains from the species tested in the current study, as well as strains from other species, should be encapsulated using the method described in this study and analyze their survival in simulated gastrointestinal fluids and in dairy food products.

- Furthermore, flow cytometry analyses of probiotics encapsulated in the various formulations of Vegetal BM 297 ATO lipid-based microparticles should also take advantage of the cell sorting ability of this technique, by collecting cells that are damaged during exposure to simulated gastric conditions as well as during storage,

© University of Pretoria

UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

and then performing reinoculation studies. This will go a long way to help confirm possible recovery and regrowth of damaged cells when they are subsequently cultured in a suitable media, or upon their arrival in the colonization site, the colon.

© University of Pretoria